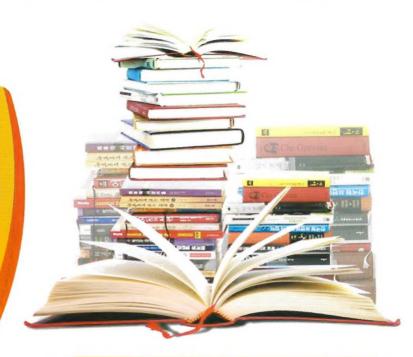


قواعد العمالقة



For Secondary Stage

للمرحلة الثانوية / جميع الصفوف ولكل رارسي اللغة الإنجليزية

كتــاب يشمل جميع قواعــــد اللغة الانجليزيــة بشكــــل مسط





## Part one





GIANTS

close

رف -11

The letter

تتكون حروف الهجاء اللنجليزية من (26 حرفاً:

(21) حرفاً ساكن consonants ورق احرف متحركة vowels وهم (5) احرف متحركة

cow



ரித்

كال الك 1) Capital letters الحروف الكسرة E F G H I J K L M N O P Q R S T U V e f a h i i k l m n o p a r

2) Small letters

الحروف الصغيرة

🗐 للحظ أن اللغة الانجليزية تتكون من 26حرفاً و تحتوى على 48 صوناً (sound) وذلـك بسـبب أن بعـض الحـروف لهــا أكثر من صوت على سبيل المثال:

## The letter (C)

 (e - i) أو أي حرف متحرك (الكاف) إذا أتى بعده أي حرف ساكن ماعدا (h - y) أو أي حرف متحرك ماعدا (€ - 1) comic

(e, i, y) عنطق كحرف (س) إذا جاء بعده حرف (C) ينطق كحرف (س) police policy circle cinema cell

cut

(io, ie, ia) ينطق كحرف (ش) إذا أتى بعده (C) ينطق كحرف (ش

especial financial social conscientious efficient

و حرف الـ (c) إذا تبع بحرف (h) فستكون هناك ثلاث اصوات بنطق حرف (تش)

crazv

choice chief chair teacher chest cheese 🗿 وينطق حرف (ك)

choral chorus headache stomach school chemist 🕡 وينطق حرف (ش)

<u>∠</u>AAA

Machine chassis champagne

cat

## The letter (S)

♦ حرف الـ (S) ينطق كحرف (س) إذا أتى بعده أى حرف ساكن أو متحرك ماعدا (h − i − u)

spin safe steam sound sun sea ♦ حرف الـ (S) ينطق كحرف (ش) إذا جاء بعده حرف (h) في بعض الكلمات مثل: should shoes shelf she short show

🕡 حرف الـ (S) ينطق كحرف (ذ) إذا جاء قبله حرف ( i - u ) في بعض الكلمات مثل:

revise advise refuse visit is use



## 🔃 The letter (②) 🧧

		(e, i, y	ه أي حرف ماعدا (١	ف (الجيم) إذا أتى بعد	حرف الـ (g) ينطق كحره
go	gap	glad	game	glass	grab
		(e, i, )	ا جاء بعده حرف (٧	ف (الجيم العطشة) إذ	حرف الـ (9) ينطق كحره
giant	gym	geography	gem	gymnastic	s general
		( <b>e</b> , <b>i</b> , <b>y</b> )	لجيم) إذا جاء بعده	التي تنطق كحرف (اا	فيما عدا بعض الكلمات
get	girl	gift	give	gear	geese
		ق (صامت)	ف (الفاء) أو لا تنطر	رف (الجيم) أو كحر	حرف الـ (gh) ينطق كح
ghost	light	fight	bought	enough	laugh
			tter ((t))	The second second	
		متحرك ماعدا (۱۱) متا ،	ای حرف ساکت اه	رالتام) إذا إنه بعده	حرف الـ (1) بنطق كحر ف
take	top	متعرك ماعدا (n) مثل table	ای حرف ساکن او tent	(التاء) إذا اتى بعده tin	حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف tree
take		table	tent	tin	
		table	tent	tin	tree
take	top	table ڪلمات مثل three	tent رف (h) ف <i>ی</i> بعض ال throw	tin (ث) إذا جاء بعده حر think	tree حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف
cloth	top	table ڪلمات مثل three	tent رف (h) ف <i>ی</i> بعض ال throw	tin (ث) إذا جاء بعده حر think	tree حرف الـ (t) ينطق ڪعرف thank
	top	table ڪلمات مثل three ڪلمات مثل the	tent رف (h) فی بعض ال throw ف (h) فی بعض الد father	tin (ث) إذا جاء بعده ح think (ذ) إذا جاء بعده حر than	tree حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف thank حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف
cloth this	top	table ڪلمات مثل three ڪلمات مثل the	tent رف (h) فی بعض الا throw ف (h) فی بعض الد father (u) فی بعض الکل	tin (ث) إذا جاء بعده ح think (ذ) إذا جاء بعده حر than	tree حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف thank حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف bother حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف
cloth	top bath that	table کلمات مثل three کلمات مثل the مات مثل lecture	tent رف (h) فی بعض ال throw ف (h) فی بعض الد father فی بعض الکل agricultur	tin (ث) إذا جاء بعده حر think (ذ) إذا جاء بعده حر than (تش) إذا أتى بعده ( e   nature	tree حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف thank حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف bother حرف الـ (t) ينطق كحرف

#### وهي الحروف التي تكتب ولا تنطق:

Letter (b)	قبله حرف (m) أو بعد حرف (t)		lamb	comb	climb	debt
Letter (k)	بعده حرف (n)		knife	know	knight	knee
Letter (I)	بعده حرف (k - d - f)		talk	should	could	half
Letter (n)	قبله حرف (m)	.4	autumn	Hymnbook	كتاب الترانيم	•
Letter (p)	بعده حرف (S) في أول الجملة	بغض	pseudo	psychology	psycholo	gist
Letter (s)	بعده حرف (۱)	7	aisle	island	islander	
Letter (t)	قبله حرف (s)	الكلمات	castle	wrestle	fasten	listen
	بعده حرف (٥)	17	hour	honest	honour	
Letter (h)	قبله حرف (w)	_ <b>बै</b> .	what	why	where	when
	قبله حرف (g)		light	fight	night	might
1 -44 ()	بعده حرف (r)		write	wrestling	wrong	wrist
Letter (w)	بعده حرفی (ho)		who	whose	whoop	whole

لا يمكننا وضع قواعد ثابتة لنطق الحروف ولكن يمكننا وضع بعض الثوابت في النطق مع وجود شواذ تساعدنا في النطق. أفضل طريقة لمعرفة الاصوات و كيفية النطق الصحيح هي الممارسة عن طريق التدرب علي نطق الكلمات.

# GIANTS

## The word

🗐 الكلمة: مجموعة من الحروف معاً تعطي معني ويمكن تقسيم الكلمة إلى **7** اجزاء.

#### أقســـام الكلـام Parts of Speech

Noun )	Pronoun) (	Verb )	( Adjective ) (	Adverb ) (	Article )	Preposition) حرث جر

## 1) Noun

د أو مجرد:	و مكان أو جما	<ul> <li>الاسم هو كلمة تستخدم للتسمية ويشمل اسم انسان أو حيوان أو</li> </ul>
Person	ا شخص	Ali - Aya - man - woman - boy - girl - worker - vet etc.
Place		Cairo - school - home - park - Egypt - cityetc.
Animal	حيوان	monkey - bird - lion - cat - tiger - bee - insect etc.
Thing		car - bag -plant - tree - tool- shirt - pen - office etc.
Abstract	معنوي	freedom - independence - evil - love - beautyetc. ویمکن تقسیم الاسم بشکل عام إلی:
The proper noun	الاسم العا	Ali - Aya - Egypt - Africa - Cairo etc. اسم شخص أو مكان أو حدث
he common noun م		animal - bird - book - car - child - man - pen - river - street - tree - town etc. هو اسم عام لڪل
The Material noun	الاسم الماد	glass - gold - iron - milk - salt - wateretc. المادة الخام
The collective noun ن علی الجمع	(	army - audience - crew - group - herd - people - police - team etc. هو اسم لجموعة من الأشخاص أو الأشياء
The Abstract noun	الاسم المج	action - beauty - courage - death - fear - grief - happiness - life - love etc. يشير إلى شيء معنوي وليس مادي
	The state of the s	الى أربعة (The Gender) إلى أربعة [[
ڪور Masculine Gender		man - boy - brother - uncle - son - father - husband - actor - hero - waiter - kingetc.
لَاثُ Feminine Gender		woman - girl - sister - aunt - daughter - mother wife - actress - heroine - waitress- queenetc.
Common Gender ಲ್ಲ	الاسم المش	bird - child - cousin - enemy - friend - parent - teacher - person - cat - doctor etc.
اید للجماد Neuter Gender		book - box - glass - house - pen - stone - table - car chairetc.
The simple pour		ويمكن تقسيم اللسم من حيث الشكل(The Form) إلى ثلاثة أقس board - chair - knife - pen - man - ball - box etc.
		armchair - blackboard - railway - rainbow
	The state of the s	sailor- friendship - happiness - childhood - building
The derivative noun		sanor - mendship - nappiness - childhood - building singer. اسم المشتق من فعل أو صفة أو اسم أخر بإضافة مقطع إلى أخره



ويمكن تقسيم اللسم من حيث العدد (Countable and Uncountable) إلى قسمين:

#### الأسماء المعدودة وغير المعدودة Countable and Uncountable Nouns

#### **Countable Nouns**

الأسماء المعدودة

- (a an one this that each every...) الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها مفرد ويمكن أن يأتي قبلهم واحدة من
  - (is was has v+s....) مفرد (a) ویأتی بعدها فعل مفرد

bag	this car	each boy	one story	is
a book	this table	each student	one pen	was
an apple	that bus	every hero	one cup	, has
an egg	that watch	every box	one flat	v+s

- ۞ الأسماء التي تعد يكون لها جمع بإضافة (s / es / ies) إلى أخرها.
- (these those many few a lot of several some any...) ويمكن أنّ يأتي قبلهم [
  - (are were have infinitive....) ویأتی بعدها فعل جمع

bag <mark>s</mark>	these cars	many boys	four stories	are
books	these tables	few students	two pens	were
apples	those buses	any heroes	a lot of cups	have
eggs	those watches	some boxes	lots of flats	infinitive

## Important Notes

- نجمع معظم الأسماء بإضافة (S)
- bag⊃ bagspen⊃ penstrain⊃ trainsboy⊃ boysflat⊃ flatsplane⊃ planes
  - ۞ الأسماء التي تنتهي بـ (O قبلها حرف ساكن) s / ch / sh / x / z / تأخذ (es):
- box Doxes witch Witches hero heroes glass Displays wish Wishes volcano volcanoes
  - 🕜 الأسماء التي تنتهي بـ ( y قبلها حرف ساكن) تأخذ (ies) بدون ( y أما إذا كانت ( y قبلها حرف متحرك) تأخذ ( s) بعد ( y):
- factory factories family families party parties monkey monkeys way play plays
  - 3 إذا انتهى الاسم بـ (f / fe) البعض يضاف له ves مع حذف (f / fe) البعض يضاف له (s) بعد (f / fe) بعد عاف العصم بدا
- wolf Dwolves knife Dknives wife Dwives belief Dbeliefs roof Droofs chief Dchiefs
  - ⊙ الملكية مع الاسماء (لاحظ الفرق ما بين S' و'S)

s + اسم مفرد/اسم جمع لاينتهي بـ S	Ali's car	children's house	men's clothes
اسم جمع ینتهی بـ S یضاف له " فقط	boys' house	birds' wings	ladies' songs

**Wise Saying** 

All great discoveries are made by mistake. کل المخترعات العظیمة اِکتشفت بالخطأ

ولكل دارسي الغثة الإنجليزية



#### 📵 الأسماء التي تعد قد يكون لها جمع غير منتظم مثل:

مفرد Singular				
man	رجل			
woman	امرأة			
child	طفل			
tooth	سنه			
foot	قدم			
OX	ثور			
mouse	فأر			
basis	أساس			
bacterium	بكتريا			
oasis	واحة			
datum	معلومة			
crisis	أزمة			
phenomenon	ظاهرة			
goose	اوزة			

Plui	al جمع
men	رجال
women	نساء
children	أطفال
teeth	أسنان
feet	أقدام
oxen	ثيران
mice	فئران
bases	أسس
bacteria	بكتريا
oases	واحات
data	معلومات
crises	أزمات
phenomena	ظواهر
geese	أوز

#### هناك أسماء دائما في صيغة الجمع:

people	الناس	scissors	مقص	jeans	بنطلون جينز
police	الشرطة	stairs	السلم	shorts	بنطلون قصير
clothes	ملابس	remains	بقايا	trousers	بنطلون
glasses	نظارة	public	العامة / الجمهور	pliers	زردية (بنسة)
youth	الشباب	cattle	ماشية	goods	بضائع

#### ◊ بعض الاسماء تكون مفرد أو جمع حسب المعنى المستخدم:

مفرد Singular				
the people	الشعب (مفرد / جمع)			
means	وسيلة			
series	سلسلة			
species	فصيلة			
craft	ناقلة			
fish	سمكة			
deer	غزال			
sheep	خروف			
mathematics	علم الرياضيات			
statistics	علم الإحصاء			

جمع Plural				
people	الناس (جمع)			
means	وسائل			
series	سلاسل			
species	فصائل			
craft	ناقلات			
fish	سمك			
deer	غزلان			
sheep	غنم			
mathematics	حسابات			
statistics	الإحصاءات			

- ✓ Statistics show that women live longer than men.
- ✓ Statistics is an easy subject.
- ✓ On average, people who don't smoke are healthier than people who do.

) ولكنها مفرد :	قد تنتهي بـ (s	بعض الاسماء	0
-----------------	----------------	-------------	---

classics 2	دراسة إليونانية والرومانيا	genetics	علم الوراثة	economics	علم الاقتصاد
politics	علم السياسة	statistics	علم الإحصاء	gymnastics	ألعاب الجمباز
physics	الفيزياء	athletics	ألعاب القوي	linguistics	علم اللغويات
mathemat	ics الرياضيات	electronics	الالكترونيات	mechanics	علم اليكانيكا

0000

✓ Physics is a hard subject.

✓ Athletics is my favourite sport.

✓ Economics helps us to run any economic problem.





لاحظ الأسماء الكلية تعامل جمع (إذا إشير إلى عناصرها كأجزاء متفرقة) وتعامل مفر د (إذا إشير إلى عناصرها كجزء واحد):

.(5,5)	المارات الماراتين الماراتين				
the public	العامة	class	الفصل	government	الحكومة
people	الشعب	school	المدرسة	gang	عصابة
group	مجموعة	faculty	الكلية	cast	فريق التمثيل
team	فريق	navy	الأسطول	band	فرقة موسيقية
family	عائلة	army	الجيش	staff	هيئة عاملين
crew	طاقم سفينة أو طائرة	population	السكان	Herd (pack-floo	قطيع حيوانات (k

✓ The Egyptian team is playing well.

✓ All team are leaving the pitch.

الحظ استخدام ما يلي مع الاسماء المعدودة الجمع:

(some - any - a lot of - lots of - many - few - a few - how many) + اسم يعد جمع

- ✓ My friends are coming to stay at the weekend.
- ✓ We didn't take many pictures.

© لاحظ استخدام the قبل صفة تتحول الصفة إلى اسم جمع وتساوي في المعني (people + الصفة):

.... فاقدي البصر the blind / الطيبين the poor / الأغنياء the rich / الفقراء the poor

✓ The rich are to help the poor (poor people) in this time.

#### **Uncountable Nouns**

الأسماء غير العدودة

📵 الأسماء التي لا تعد اسماء ليس لها جمع ولا يأتي قبلهم (a – an– one – these – those)

(is - was - has - v + s) ویأتی بعدها فعل مفرد

	important	portant uncountable nouns		اسماء مهمة لا تعد		
information	معلومات	music	موسيقى	traffic	مرور	
news	اخبار	equipment	المعدات	electricity	كهرباء	
furniture	اثاث	cloth	قماش	jewellery	مجوهرات	
advice	نصيحة	baggage	حقائب	rubbish	قمامة	
money	مال	luggage	أمتعة	work	عمل	
bread	خبز	travel	السفر	hair	شعر	
time	وقت	clothing	المليس	machinery	וצב	

🗐 ويمكننا تقسيم اللسماء التي لا تعد كما يلي:

	Septim responses to the septim
1. Liquids	> milk - water - juice - tea - coffee - oil etc.
2. Materials	b gold - wood - coffee - tea - paper - iron - glass - stone - sugar etc.
3. Gases	oxygen - hydrogen - carbon dioxideetc. الغازات
راسية 4. School subjects	history - physics - chemistry - biology - geography - psychology - mathematics etc.
5. Meals	breakfast - lunch - dinner - supper الوجبان
6. Languages	> Arabic - English - French - German etc.
ت 7. Sports	tennis - football - gymnastics - volleyball - squash - hockey swimming - athletics etc.
8. activities 2	studying - reading - writing - shopping etc.
9. Abstract nouns	<ul> <li>freedom - advice - luck - honesty - hope - beauty</li> <li>help - love - experience - confidence - courage - patience - peace - poverty - knowledge etc.</li> </ul>
10. Natural phenomena	drought - lightning - heat - snow - thunder - light -
الطبيعية	rain etc.



- ✓ Most furniture is made of wood.
- ✓ I'm sorry but my patience is wearing thin.
- ✓ English is spoken in many countries.
- ✓ This coffee is smooth and rich.
- √ The only piece of furniture he has is a bed.
- ✓ This oil's a bit old. I'm afraid.
- ✓ Money is the root of all evil.
- √ Your luggage is very heavy.
- √ This bread is fresh.
- √ This information is very useful.

✓ The water in the lake is so clear. √ My advice for you is to buy a new car.

#### Quantifiers

تعبيرات الكمية والعدد

#### a lot of - many - much - a few - few - a little - little

100705000000000000000000000000000000000		
a lot of	في الجملة الخبرية المثبتة.	📋 تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع أو اسم لا يعد ويفضل استخدامهما
=lots of	▶ I have got a lot of friends.	I have got a lot of money.
many	ىتفھام.	📋 تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع ويفضل استخدامها في النفي واللس
many	▶ I haven't got many friends.	Have you got many friends?
much	ھام.	📋 تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد ويفضل استخدامها في النفي والاستف
much	▶ I haven't got much money.	Have you got much money?
a few		🧻 تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولكن يكفي.
alew	► I have <b>a few</b> experiences.	(enough)
few	ني الجملة لذا لا تأتي في الجملة المنفية).	📋 تأتي قبل اسم يعد جمع وتشير إلى عدد قليل ولا يكفي (تنف
iew	► I have few experiences.	(not enough)
a little		📋 تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولكن تكفى.
a little	I have a little money.	(enough)
little	ى الجملة لذا لا تأتي في الجملة المنفية).	📋 تأتي قبل اسم لا يعد وتشير إلى كمية قليلة ولا يكفي (تنف
mule	▶ I have little money.	(not enough)

- الله المثبتة إذا (many much) في النفي والاستفهام ولكن يمكن استخدامهم في الجملة المثبتة إذا [ حاء قبلها (so - too - qs) أو إذا أتوا قبل الفاعل:
  - ✓ He has so much money.
- √ I have faced too many problems recently.
- ✓ Many people suffer from diabetes.

#### Some - anv

The same of	سر لا يعد في جملة خبرية مثبتة وفي سؤإلى العرض والطلب.	اً
	I found some good stories.	اسم يعد
some	I drank some water.	اسم لا يعد
	▶ Would you like some tea?	عرض
	Can I have some of these oranges?	طلب
	جمع) أو اسم لا يعد في جملة استفهامية أو منفية.	📋 تأتي قبل اسم يعد (مفرد أو
	▶ I don't want <mark>any</mark> problems.	اسم يعد
	I didn't drink any juice.	اسم لا يعد
any	Do you have any experience?	سؤال
any	النفي مثل :	🧻 تأتي مع الكلمات الدالة على
	hardly - scarcely - seldom - never - without	refuse - too to
	▶ He never had any luck. = he had no l	uck.
SERVICE STATE	▶ We hardly had any money.	



## mportant Notes

◘ يمكننا تلخيص تعبيرات الكمية وتعبيرات العدد في الجدول التإلى:

يعد (جمع)	لا يعد (يعامل مفرد)	يعد ولا يعد
many (several)	much (plenty of)	a lot of
few	Little	lots of
a few	a little	some
How many	How much	any

🕜 لاحظ استخدام ما يلي مع الاسماء الغير معدودة:

(some - any - a lot of - lots of - much - little - a little - how much) + اسم لا يعد

- ✓ We didn't do much shopping.
- ✓ I have a little work to do.
- ✓ We listened to some music.
- ✓ Did you buy any apple juice?
- @ لاحظ استخدام (a an) مع بعض الأسماء التي لا تعد إذا سبقتها صفة:
- √ We had a wonderful lunch at a restaurant yesterday.
- ✓ Ali had lost his job, and it was a difficult time for him.

بعض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل:

عض الأسماء يمكن أن تعد أو لا تعد حسب المعنى مثل:				
الاسم	المعني	تعد أو لا تعد		
a paper / papers		يعد	I'm going to buy a paper.	
paper	ورق الكتابة	لا يعد	I'd like some writing paper.	
an orange	برتقال فاكهة		There are two oranges on the table.	
orange	اللون البرتقإلى	لا يعد	I don't like orange. I prefer red.	
an iron	مكواة	يعد	She bought an iron yesterday.	
iron	الحديد	لايعد	This table is made of iron.	
a chicken	دجاجة	يعد	I'd like to buy a chicken.	
chicken	لحم الدجاج	لا يعد	Do you like chicken?	
a company	شركة	يعد	The law obliges companies to pay decent wages.	
company	صحبة	لايعد	You should be in good company.	
a time / times	مرة / مرات	يعد	▶ He went to London three times.	
time	الوقت	لايعد	Don't hurry. There's plenty of time.	
a hair / hairs	شعرة / شعر		I see two hairs on your jacket.	
hair	شعر (قص)		My hair is short.	
a school	مدرسة	يعد	The government built a school in our village.	
school	دراسة	لايعد	My brother started school at the age of 6.	
a coffee	فنجان من القهوة	يعد	Could I have two coffees? (cups of coffee)	
coffee	قهوة (مشروب)	لايعد	▶ Have you got any coffee?	
a tea	كوب شاي	يعد	Could I have two cups of coffee and a tea, please?	
tea	شأى (مشروب)	لا يعد	India grows tea for export.	
an experience	تجربة بالحياة	يعد	Travelling is an experience you will never forget.	
experience	خبرة	لا يعد	This job needs experience.	
a light	مصباح كهربي	يعد	We need two lights in this room.	
light	الضوء	لا يعد	The sun gives us light.	
a cold	نزلةبرد		▶ I've got a bad cold.	
cold	البرد عموما	لا يعد	Don't go out in the cold without a coat.	
a glass	كوب زجاجي		Would you like a glass of water?	



الأسم	المعني	تعد أو لا تعد	
glass	زجاج	لا يعد	The window's made of unbreakable glass.
a wood	غابة	يعد	We went for a walk in the woods after lunch.
wood	خشب	لايعد	The house was built of wood but faced with brick.
عمل فني /عمل أدبي / مصنع a work		يعد	We need to build a new work in this area.
work العمل ۱'ve got so much work to do.		I've got so much work to do.	

⊙ يمكن تحويل الأسماء التي لا تعد إلى أسماء تعد كالأتي:

#### 

#### 1) General Partitives

ألفاظ التحزئة العامة

باستخدام (a bit of - a piece of) كألفاظ تجزئة عامه وفي الجمع (bits of - pieces of)

- ✓ I'd like a piece (a bit) of cloth / bread / advice.
- ✓ I'd like two pieces (bits) of cloth / bread / advice.

#### 2) Special Partitives

ألفاظ التحائة الخاصة

الكلمة	المعني	تأتي مع
a cup of	فنجان من	(tea / water / coffee)
a glass of	کوب من	(juice / water / lemonade)
a bottle of	زجاجة من	(water / juice / milk / oil /)
a jar of	برطمان من	(jam / honey)
a pair of	زوج من	(boots / shoes / gloves / scissors / socks)
a loaf of	رغيف من	bread
a bar of	قطعة من	(chocolate / soap /)
a kilo of	كيلومن	(sugar / pasta / flour / cheese)
a bag of	ڪيس من	(pasta / flour / rice)
a tin of	علبة من	(beans / sardine)
a slice of	شريحة من	(bread / meat / cake)
a packet of	لفه من	(tea / coffee / biscuits)
a sheet of	فرخمن	(paper)
a tube of	انبوبة من	(toothpaste / cream / blood)
a dish of	طبق من	(chicken / meat / rice /)

- 🗐 وعند الجمع نجمع لفظ التجزئة ولا نجمع اسم المادة.
- √ two sheets of paper two pairs of shoes two jars of jam five cups of tea two loaves of bread two slices of meat six bars of chocolate.
  - 🗐 للحظ الفعل بعد الفاظ التجزئة:

يأتي بعده فعل مفرد		يأتي بعده فعل جمع		
a kilo of sugar	is	six kilos of sugar	are	
a jar of jam	was	two jars of jam	were	
a cup of tea	has	five cups of tea	have	
a pair of shoes	Inf. + s	pairs of shoes	Inf.	





€ العبارات الدالة على الكمية والمبالغ المإلية والزمن والثمن والمسافة والوزن ودرجات الحرارة ثعامل معاملة المفرد مع الفعل:

- ✓ Ten million pounds is a lot of money.
- √ Fifty litres of petrol fills my car.
- ✓ Five kilometers is a long way to walk.
- ✓ Two hours is a long time to wait.

◊ لاحظ الفعل مع:



a number of فعل جمع the number of فعل مفرد



- ✓ The number of people in Egypt is in increase.
- ✓ A number of boys have left their books.

الحظ الفعل مع:



فعل مفرد + اسم جمع + One of the



- ✓ One of the players was injured.
- ✓ One of the spokes of my bicycle was broken.

😯 لاحظ ان:

#### no = not....any

√ I have no money.

= I don't have any money.

✓ There is no water.

- = There isn't any water.
  - إذا جاء رابط أو تعبير بين الاسماء:
  - 🗐 للحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل غالباً ما يكون جمع

#### and / both

- ✓ Both Jana and Toka are from Beni Suef.
- √ I and my friend have established a new company.

🗐 للحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الأول

#### as well as / besides / in addition to / along with

- √ I as well as he study hard.
- √ He as well as I studies hard.
  - 🗐 للحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني

not only....but also..... / ...or... / either.....or..... / neither....nor......

- √ Neither Toka nor the students are here.
- ✓ Neither the students nor Toka is here.
- √ Either the library or bookstores are open.
- ✓ Either the bookstores or the library is open.

Wise Saying "Never

"Never apologize for having high standards.

People who really want to be in your life will rise up to meet them."

لا تعتذر أبداً عن تميُّزك عمن حولك . إن من يريدون حقاً أن يكونوا في حياتك سيرتفعون ليلتقوا بك

GIANTS





	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or c	l:	
1)	There are	students in this school.		
,	@ many	<b>b</b> much	© a lot	<b>d</b> lots
2)	There seve	eral boys playing in the i	middle of the road.	
	@ was	<b>b</b> were	© had	<b>d</b> have
3)	There are	people here this mornin	g.	
	(a) lot of	<b>(b)</b> lots of	© much	d a lot
4)	Is there tea	a in the cup?" "No, the	re isn't much."	
	@ much	<b>b</b> many	© a lot	d some
5)	Is that your	. school?" "No, it isn't		
	@ children's	<b>b</b> childrens's	© childrens'	d children
		the corner is my		
	<b>a</b> father's the car	<b>b</b> father's car	© car's father	d car's the father
7)	Our cousin Henry I	nas friends in to	wn.	
	@ much	<b>(b)</b> a lot	© any	d many
8)		es here are very nice.		
	a. these	<b>b</b> this	© that	d those
9)	Is there bo	ok on the table?		
	@ many	(b) an	© <b>a</b>	d some
10)	We've got	interesting people here		
	any ·	<b>b</b> some	© much	d an
11)	Are you reading a	book? Yes, I'm reading .		
	an an	(b) any	© some	<b>(d) a</b>
	_	cups of tea on the table	_	
	any any	(b) an	© <b>a</b>	d some
	_	e are very nice	_	
	@ much	<b>b</b> ones	© some	d any
14)		papers in this country		
	any any	<b>b</b> some	© much	(d) an
	_	resting newspaper.		
	@ any	(b) an	© <b>a</b>	<b>d</b> some
	Fill in gap:			
16)	Can I have	milk in my coffee, pleas	se?	
17)	How inforr	nation have you got fror	m the story?	
18)	I have prol	olem. Can you help me?		
-	•	reading this book ev		
•		very good yesterday		
ham to said	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
211	The group has diff			ſ
,		were sitting on chairs.		
		have you drunk today?	•	
		n the book are torn.		<u> </u>
		group was watching the	e film.	[





Mark duai gui

_			A 44 11 14	a non-manage
	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1)	We haven't got	money to buy a ne	ew car yet.	
	@ too few	<b>b</b> too much	© too many	<b>d</b> some
2)	Have they got	flat?		
	@ a lot of	<b>b</b> an	© <b>a</b>	<b>d</b> some
3)	There chil	dren in the park, weren	't there?	
	@ were a lot of	<b>b</b> were a lot	© was a lot	d was lots of
4)	There only	a little coffee in the cu	p.	
	@ was	<b>b</b> were	© had	<b>d</b> have
5)	These books here	are the		
	@ girls' books	<b>b</b> girls's books	© books' girls	d books's girls
6)	This is the	, isn't it?		
		<b>b</b> balls' boys	© boys' ball	d ball's boys
7)	There's of	coffee in the coffee ma	chine.	
	@ many	_	© a lot of	<b>d</b> lots
8)	Which sen	tence is correct?		
		kind b People are kind		<b>d</b> The people kind
9)		people at the meeting	g, only twenty.	
	(a) few	<b>b</b> a little	© any	d little
10)	people over			
		<b>b</b> There's lots of		of d There are much
11)	Mr Smith is having	a cup of tea and	bread.	
	any any	<b>b</b> some	© a	<b>d</b> an
12)	Our school doesn'	t have pupils.		
	@ much	<b>b</b> very	© many	d a lot of
13)		ns, he can give me one o	of them.	
	@ much	<b>b</b> a little	© a few	d few
	There is in			_
		<b>b</b> some hair	© a hair	d any hair
15)	_	pular at this university.		
	(a) has	<b>b</b> are	© be	<b>d</b> is
	Fill in gap:			
16)	All the news	good last week.		
17)	the police	know how the accident	happened?	
	How bagg			•
		enough to buy a me	al	
				-+O
20)		s of information have yo	ou read in this repo	
	Find the mistake,			
	-	es the performance las		[
-		o interview two men ab	_	[
		ought for me doesn't fit		
		to the class today beca		eavily [
25)	IT you want to know	v the news, you can rea	d paper.	



# Advanced Exercises Mark

Mark Churái puii 25

	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or	d:	· * ALAY 900
		ny wooden houses last o		
,	a was	<b>b</b> were	© have been	(d) had
2)	Some species of a	nimals in dange	er of being extinct.	
	a is	<b>b</b> are	© was	d has
-		include no will.		
	<b>a</b> paper		<b>O</b> : .	d papyrus
		vell as the headmaster,	_	
	a is wanting		© wants	d are wanting
		elligent for this job.		
		<b>b</b> too many		d enough
	_	noney in the bank, I'm at		
	any	<b>b</b> no	© a lot	(d) not
		t the team very		
	@ lead		© has led	d is leading
		twenty pound note las		<b>O</b>
	any		© a	d many
		embers' disagreement.		
	(a) has	<b>b</b> have	•	<b>d</b> were
,		money to travel around		(A) or form
	•	<b>b</b> many	© a lot of	d a few
		ney, however I can buy i		(A) manua
	a little		© few	<b>d</b> many
	_	her friends play	(C) am	d were
	is	<b>b</b> are	Cum	Were
	a light	trician to fit	© some light	(d) much light
		ne documents, but the p	_	_
	_			
15\	papers     The passangers' I	uggage search		
				d had
Homes		<b>b</b> has	C WOIC	
	Fill in gap:	A TAXABADA AND THE PROPERTY OF	•••	
	_	bread left in the k		
_	•	g with teachers		).
18)	There are	books on shelf. They ar	e not enough	
19)	The advice he gav	ve mevery usefu	ıl.	
		called a herd.		
	Find the mistake,	AND THE PERSON OF THE PERSON O		· ·
24)		al team player became t	the hest player in A	 frica. [
		miliar. Haven't I seen yo		
		er classmates are talkat		
		rtant so you shouldn't w		[
		workers have the final s		[
_~,			- 3	L





#### الضمائـــ Pronouns

الضمير عبارة عن كلمة تستخدم بدلا من اللسم وتجل محله وبمكن تقسيم الضمائر إلى :

1) Subject 2) Object 3) Possessive 4) Reflexive **Demonstrative** Pronouns pronouns Pronouns **Pronouns Pronouns** ضمائر المفعول

7) Relative 6) Indefinite Pronouns **Pronouns** 

## العريس مسكا الجسول جيماً

Subject Pronouns ضمائر الفاعل	Object Pronouns ضمائر المفعول	Possessive adjectives صفات الملكية	Possessive Pronouns ضمائر الملكية	Reflexive Pronouns الضمائر المنعكسة	
I UI	me	my	mine	myself	
He هو	him	his	his	himself	
ھي She	her	her	hers	herself	
هذا (لغير العاقل) It	it	its		itself	
You انترانتم	you	your	yours	مفرد Yourself جمع Yourselves	
They 🙀	them	their	theirs	themselves	
نعن We	us	our	ours	ourselves	
واحد / أي شخص One	one	one's	one's	oneself	

#### ضمائــر الفاعـــل Subject Pronouns

ı	he	she	it	You	They	We	One
انا	هو	ھي	هذا (لغير العاقل)	انت / انتم	هم	نحن	وأحد/أي شخص

هي الضمائر التي تحل محل الفاعل أي تأتي أول الجملة للحظ أن الضمير في اللغة الإنجليزية يجب أن يكون بارزاً ولكنه في العربية قد يكون بارزا أو مستترا.

🗐 أنا ونحن (we , l) يسمى ضمير المتكلم

🗐 الضمير هم (They) جمع تلعاقل وغير العاقل

✓ I hit the ball.

✓ We like football.

✓ They speak English.

- ✓ I like lions because they are strong.
- 🧻 ضمائر الغائب: (It, She, He) وجمعها (They) تحل محل الفاعل الغائب
- √ Ali (He) is a good pupil.

- √ Jana (She) speaks English well.
- √ My friends (They) go to the stadium.
- √ New cities (They) are built every year

- ✓ A cat (It) likes fish.
  - 🗐 ضمير المخاطب أنت / أنتم (you) في حالة المفرد وحالة الجمع لها نفس التكوين.
- ✓ What are you doing, Ali?

مفرد (أنت)

✓ What are you doing, my friends?

جمع (أنتم)



#### **Giants' Grammar**

#### 2) Object Pronouns

ضمائر المفعدل

me	him	her	it	you	them	us	one
انا	هو	هي	هذا (لغير العاقل)	انت / انتم	هم	نحن	وأحد/أي شخص

هي الضمائر التي تحل محل المفعول أى تأتي بعد الفعل أو حرف الجر وللحظ أن الضمير فى اللغة الإنـجليزية يجب أن يكون بارزاً ولكنه في العربية قد يكون بارزا أو مستترا.

- تستخدم بعد الفعل في الجملة المبنية للمعلوم ✓ Ali visited me vesterdav. ✓ I don't like dogs (them).
  - المرابع الدولة المينية للمحصول ألم الدولة المينية للمحصول ألم الدولة المينية للمحصول ألم الدولة المينية للمحصول
  - ✓ I was visited by Ali (him). ✓ The letter was written by her.
    - 🗐 تستخدم بعد حروف الحر
- ✓ I spoke with her.
  ✓ They laughed at him.
  - ✓ We listened to them.

    ✓ He apologized to us.
  - - الضمير (one) له نفس التكوين في حالة الفاعل وحالة المفعول به وجمعه (ones)
- 🚞 🗸 One (You) should work hard to succeed. مكانها
- - ✓ Are there any new books? I've read all these old ones.
  - 🕶 🗸 That lute is broken; I'll take this one. مع صفات الإشارة للتعبير عن مقارنة أوانتقاء
- Don't use those colours; use these ones.
  - 🗐 الضمير (🐧 له نفس التكوين في حالة الفاعل وحالة المفعول به
  - ✓ If was a very big car. ضمير مفعول ✓ I saw if in the zoo yesterday.
    - 🧾 يتحول الضمير (it) في حالة الجمع إلى (they) للفاعل (them) للمفعول
  - ✓ The bird (It) lives in a nest.
- √ The birds (They) live in nests.

✓ I saw a bee (It).

√ I saw bees (them).

## 🗐 للحظ استخدام الضمير (tt) في حالة الفاعل والمفعول به كما يلي:

	غير العاقل	▶ There is no water in it.
	الحيوانات (المتوحشة) ولكن لاحظ فى حالة الحيوانات الإليفة ممكن استخدام he - she	<ul><li>The dog barked at me. It was sitting in the dark.</li><li>My kitten is ill. She doesn't eat.</li></ul>
₹.	الجماد	▶ This is my new flat, I bought it last week.
Ĭ		The baby is crying; see what's wrong with it.
يمكننا استخدام ١٤ مع	الأفعال المتعلقة بالأحوال الجوية	It is beautiful weather.
1	تعبيرات الزمن	It is six o'clock.
Ė		It is five miles to the station.
L	كفاعـل تحضـيري أو تمهيـدي يشـير إلى	It is nice to see you well.
	عبارة أو شبه جملة	It is pleasure to meet you, sir.
	لتأكيد كلمة أو عبارة	It is you who did that.
		▶ He is trying to master him, he won't find it easy.
		It is a year since I met her.



#### عمان الكيدة Possessive Pronouns

#### **Possessive Adjectives**

my	his	her	its	your	their	our	one's.
mine	his	hers		yours	theirs	ours	one's
ملكي	ملکه	ملكها		ملكك	ملكهم	ملكنا	ملكك

#### ضمائر الملكية تحل محل الأسماء وبذلك تستعمل بدلاً من الأسماء التي تشير إليها

🗐 يأتي بعد صفات الملكية اسو:

✓ This is my new car.

√ This is his mobile.

√ I didn't see her cat.

√ The hen is sitting on its nest.

🗐 لا بأتى بعد ضوائر الملكية اسم

✓ This car belongs to me. It's mine.

√ This car belongs to Ali, It's his.

√ This car belongs to Aya. It's hers.

✓ This book is ours.

الدظ أن (its) صفة ملكية أي يأتي بعدها ولا يوجد للضمير ti ضمير ملكية للن الغير عاقل ليس له ملكية

√ You will break its legs.

🗐 للحظ التركيب التإلى:



◄ اسم + صفة ملكية= own صفة ملكية = ضمير ملكية+ (of اسم جمع) of اسم مفرد a / an >



√ They are friends of mine (my own).

= They are my friends.

✓ He is a husband of hers (her own).

= He is her husband.

🗐 بمكننا التعسر عن الملكية بأكثر من صيغة

✓ This is Toka's book.

= This book is Toka's.

= This is her book = This book is hers.

= This book belongs to Toka.

4) Reflexive pronouns

myself	himself	herself	itself	yourself yourselves	themselves	ourselves	oneself
بنفسي	بنفسه	بنفسها	بنفسه (غير عاقل)	بنفسك/بأنفسكم	بأنفسهم	بأنفسنا	بنفسه

🗐 نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة في حالة ان يكون الفاعل هو نفسة المفعول

✓ You can blame yourself.

✓ Ali and Hani injured themselves when they fell off their bicycles.

✓ She fell over, but she didn't hurt herself.

🗐 نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة للتأكيد على من قام بالفعل وتأتى بعد الفاعل أو المفعول

√ I myself did the job.

= I did the job myself.

√ The president himself gave her the award.

= The president gave her the award himself.

🗐 يستخدم الضمير المنعكس بمعنى (بدون مساعدة من أحد / بمفردة) عندما يسبق بـ by ويساوى

(on قىكىلە aفp+own)

by myself = on my own = alone = without any help by himself =on his own = alone = without any help

√ I went to the cinema alone (on my own) (by myself) (without any help).

✓ Did you paint that picture on your own (alone) (by yourself) (without any help)?







🗐 للحظ الاختلاف ما بين:

تعبر عن قيامي بالشيء بمفردي on my own = bv myself = alone الملكية تعبرعن / ملكي of my own = belong to me

- ✓ I learned to use this computer on my own.
- = This car belongs to him √ He has a car of his own 🗐 لا تستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر التالية (with – next to – behind – about) ولكن نستخدم ضمائر المفعوا :
- √ I will take you with me. ✓ Can I sit next to you?
  - after / for / on يمكن أن نستخدم الضمائر المنعكسة بعد حروف الجر 🧻
- ✓ The children are old enough to look after themselves.
- ✓ She can depend on herself.

الأنعال مثل: هم تعض الأفعال مثل: هم بعض الأفعال مثل: هم الشعال مثل: هم الشعال المناعكسة عادة ألم المناعكسة المنا

shower / shave / dress / relax / wash / wake up / sit down / stand up

√ I showered and dressed.

#### ضمائب الاشارة / Demonstrative Pronouns

this	that	these	those
هذا	ياك ا	ھۇلاء	أولئك
للمفرد القريب	للمفرد البعيد	للجمع القريب	للجمع البعيد
بعدها فعل مفرد	بعدها فعل مفرد	بعدها فعل جمع	بعدها فعل جمع

- 🗐 تشير ضمائر اللشارة إلى الأشياء التي تدل عليها وتميزها وتحددها أو تدل على الأشياء لتحديدها
- ✓ This is the one I want.
- √ He had told her off. That's why she was so upset.
- √ These are my books.
- √ Those were their bags.
- 🗐 تستخدم كضمائر إذا حلت محل الاسم أو تكون صفات اشارة إذا جاء بعدها اسم
- ✓ This is my hat. ضمير
- ✓ This book is interesting.
- 6) Indefinite Pronouns

الضمائر غير المحددة

تستخدم للتعبير عن أشخاص أو أشياء أو أماكن غبر محددة:

plantige	everybody	کل فرد	everything	ڪل شيءِ
every	everyone	کل فرد	everywhere	في كل مكان
AND THE PARTY.	someone	شخصما	something	شيءِما
some	somebody	شخصما	somewhere	مكان ما
	anybody	أى فرد	anywhere	في أي مكان
any	anyone	أى فرد	anything	أى شيءِ
	no one	لاأحد	nothing	لاشيء
no	nobody	لاأحد	nowhere	لا مكان

each	ڪل	مفرد + another	أخر (للمفرد)	some	بعض
every	ڪل	جمع + other	أخر (للجمع)	any	ای
all	ڪل	others	الآخرون (بدون اسم)	many	كثير (للعدد)
both	كلاهما	the other	الآخر .	few	قليل (للعدد)
neither	7	such	مثل	much	كثير (للكمية)
either	أى	none	لا أحد	less	قليل(للكمية)



#### all

اللسم والفعل بعدها مفرد أو جمع طبقا هل بعد أولا بعد

- فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد لا يعد + all (1 ⇒ All the money was stolen.
- 2) all / all of + فعل جمع All (of) my students are dates.
- all of + ضمير = ضمير مفعول + all ⇒ All of them are intelligent. = They all are intelligent.

#### both

#### 🗐 الاسم والفعل بعدهادائماً جمع وتشير إلى شخصين أو شيئين فعل جمع + اسم جمع (of) both Doth books are useful.

- فعل جمع +.... both....and
- Both Jana and Toka are clever. 3) both (of) + ضمير مفعول Both of us are tall.
- فعل جمع + both + ضمير = ⇒ = We both gre tall. استخدام (both) بدون (of)كضمير فاعل (4
  - I saw Jana and Toka. Both were sad.

#### each

اللسم والفعل بعدها مفرد (إلا في حالة اسم جمع فعل مفرد بعد (لا يأتي قبلها حال) تشير إلى شخصين أو شيئين

- فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد + ach
- **Each student** here is clever. فعل مفرد + اسم جمع أو ضمير + each of **⇒** Each of them(students) is clever.
- ⇒ I have two sisters. Each has long hair.
- تستخدم كضمير فاعل each

#### every

🧃 الاسم والفعل بعدها مفرد وتشير إلى أكثر من اثنين ولا تستخدم كضمير ولا يأتي بعدها

- فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد + every (1
  - ⇒ Every student here is clever.
- 2) (nearly almost...) every يأتي قبلها حال Nearly every student was lazy.

قبل الوقت (3

I visited my relatives every week.

#### either

اللسم والفعل بعدها مفرد إلا في حالة of يكون اللسم جمع والفعل مفرد

فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد + aither (1

- ⇒ Either book has useful information.
- فعل مفرد أو جمع + اسم جمع + 2) either of
- ither of my students gets the full mark.
- 3) either + فاعل + or + فاعل الثاني + or فاعل الثاني + or + فاعل 🗢 Either Jana or her friends are active

either + فعل منفى (4

⇒ I didn't like either of my photos.

#### Neither

- 🗐 الاسم والفعل بعدها مفرد إلا في حالة of يكون الاسم جمع والفعل مفرد:
- فعل مفرد + اسم مفرد + neither

- Neither student is clever.
- فعل مفرد +اسم جمع + neither of
- Neither of my students is clever.
- قاعل الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني + nor + فاعل+ 3) neither
- ⇒ Neither Mai nor her friends are lazy.

- يمكن استخدمها كضمير (4
- ⇒ I phoned Mona and Mai, but neither was available.



Why on a distance

#### Giants' Grammar

## Important Notes

◘ لاحظ أن الضمائر التالية تأخذ دائما فعل مفرد وعند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير مفرد أيضا

#### (something / nothing / anything / everything)

- Everything has been prepared as it should have been planned.
- 1 saw something in the garden. I think, it is a wild animal.

(they - them - their) الضمائر التالية تأخذ دائما فعلاً مفرداً ولكن عند الإشارة إليها بضمير نستخدم ضمير جمع أو استخدام (he or she) مكان الفاعل (him or her) مكان الفعول

(someone /somebody / no one / nobody / anyone /anybody / everyone / everybody

- Somebody has cleaned the house. They have watered the flowers.
- Each student in the group is doing their best.
- No one was in the house. They (He or She) were in the party.
- Somebody stole my wallet. I didn't recognise them (him or her).

٢ لاحظ الفرق بين



(= one more) اسم مفرد بعد + another



- This tea is nice. I'd like another cup.
- I'd like to stay here for another two days.





- I need to research this with other classmates.
- There was certainly other information.



- Some people are rich; others are poor.
- Some writers are greater than others.



- She has two kittens. one is black and the other is all white.
- He had his hat in one hand and a bunch of flowers in the other.

(Either..or../Neither..nor../Not only..but also..) لاحظ مع هذه التعبيرات الفعل يتبع الفاعل الثاني (علامة على الثاني (على الثاني) (عل

- Neither Ahmed nor I am happy.
- Not only Jana but also they are late.
- Either I or Aya is out of the competition.

الحظما يأتى بعد:

each - every - either - neither (is - was - has - V+S فعل مفرد قد يكون) each - either - neither + of + (اسمع جمع) + (is - was - has - V+S فعل مفرد قد يكون

- Every student here is clever.
- Each of students is clever.
- Either book has useful information. Either of my students gets the full mark.
- Neither student is clever.
- Neither of my students is clever.
- Every student here is clever. (every of لا يمكننا قول)

ممائــر الوصــل ﴿ Relative Pronouns

سوف يتم شرحهم في حزء منفصل





	Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c o	r d:			
		ying with toys.				
,	(a) her	(b) its	© their	(d) his		
2)	They knew all abou	ut my friend and				
	<b>@</b>	(b) me	© we	(d) our		
3)	_	eople in houses	0			
	(a) that	-	<b>©</b> this	d these		
4)	Helen asked	to get some milk.				
	@ me	<b>b</b> mine	© I	d my		
5)	books are					
	@ You	<b>b</b> Your	© Yours	<b>d</b> Yourself		
6)	girls are p	<i>I</i> -				
	(a) Those	•	© This	<b>d</b> There		
7)		vith puppies.				
٥,	(a) them	<b>b</b> theirs	© they	d their		
8)		mework. We finished it				
٥١	@ ourselves	<b>b</b> themselves	© yourself	d herself		
9)	I came here with J	_		<b>2</b>		
40)	(a) her	(b) she	©he	<b>d</b> they		
		cup of tea in ha				
	in his	<b>b</b> your	©her	d our		
11)		da and Nabil to take ca				
40)	@ ourselves	<b>b</b> herself		<b>d</b> yourself		
		going to the cinema with		(A) have		
	(a) her	<b>b</b> its	© their	<b>d</b> hers		
	(a) has	a different color	_	(A) house		
	•	<b>b</b> are ling onside of the	© were	<b>d</b> have		
	a each	<b>b</b> all	© both	d neither		
	•	itin September.	_	d nemer		
	(a) we	b us	© ours	d our		
			C 0013	<b>W</b> 001		
40	Fill in gap:					
-	is very ho					
		in town last week. He's	looking really well.			
18)	Let give yo	ou a hand?				
19) He cut with a knife.						
20) of my friends is kind so I like them.						
in the	Find the mistake,	then correct it:				
21)	These bag is mine.					
		r, I bought her recently.		[		
	Ali met each of our			[		
	Do you want every			[		
25)	Those pupils in the	ese class are not clever.		[		



# 2 Intermediate Exercises Mark

	Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c o	r d:			
1)	Go and see	and his friend.				
•	(a) he	<b>b</b> them	© they	<b>d</b> him		
2)	This island belong	s to who were h	nere first.			
	(a) they	<b>b</b> them	© their	d those		
3)	We are much bette	er than at footb	all.			
	(a) them	<b>b</b> they	© their	d there		
4)		two articles?" "Yes, b				
	•	<b>b</b> neither was	© either was	d none was		
5)	Would you like	_				
	(a) the others	-	© others	<b>d</b> another		
6)	_	person who cou				
	(a) the others	_	© others	<b>d</b> another		
7)	•	anies a local ch	_			
٥,		<b>b</b> supporting		<b>d</b> support		
8)		glasses, everything	_			
٥,	@ was	<b>b</b> has	© is	<b>d</b> are		
9)	_	t expensive.				
40	(a) has	(b) are	© were	<b>d</b> is		
10	_	or his friends we		<b>(1)</b>		
4.4	(a) has	<b>b</b> is	© are	<b>d</b> have		
11	_	out would open	_	(A) 1 11		
40	@ either	<b>b</b> neither	© nor	<b>d</b> both		
12		s? -No, it isn't		(A) abada		
40	@ of her		© of she	d she's		
13	_	e sitting in front of		<b>(1)</b>		
4.4	@we	b us	© our	d ours		
14		"I think it's		(d) Ab ain		
15		<b>b</b> theirs		<b>d</b> their		
10		not read it although he l	_	d himself		
	@ herself	<b>b</b> his	© him	U IIIIIISEII		
	Fill in gap:					
16	Those are the chil	dren and that is	. school.			
17	17) Is that bicycle yours? - No, it isn't					
18	This house is too	small. We need a bigger	*			
19	19) "Is that Mary's husband?" "Yes, he's husband."					
20) I can see that each of the houses painted white.						
	Find the mistake					
04		-		The second secon		
		ned each has a bicycle.		[		
22		erybody now like that ho	Juse.	[		
	) All is clever exce					
	) Each man write in	olours; use this ones.		[		
20	Don Luse mose C	olours, use uns ones.				



# Advanced Exercises Mark

	Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c or	r d:				
1)	She went to the cir	nema with a friend of		(ACADA ACADA			
	(a) hers	<b>b</b> his	© her's	d she			
2)	I'd like con	ne with us to the disco.					
	a she to	<b>b</b> her to	© her	d she			
3)	Is anybody there?						
	(a) it is	_	© she is	d there are			
4)	What do you think	of those two?" "Well, to					
	_	<b>b</b> either of them					
5)	I couldn't find the s	station, so I asked some					
	(a) them	<b>b</b> she	© he	d they			
6)		see the player					
	o neither/nor	<b>b</b> either/or	© both/or	<b>d</b> neither/and			
7)	_	when I saw the ex					
	@ myself	•	© mine	(d) my			
8)	Little Nelly won't b	e able to manage	,				
	(a) by herself	<b>b</b> herself	© by itself	d to herself			
9)	Each of the						
	@ men is	_	© man have	d man has			
10	) I have lot o	of books to read.					
	(a) other	<b>b</b> another	© the others	<b>d</b> others			
11	) Mr Marwan says th	nat he doesn't want					
	@ nobody	<b>(b)</b> anybody	© somebody	d no one			
12	)"I can't remember	what she said." "					
	Neither do I	<b>b</b> Nor can I	© Me neither	<b>d</b> Me either			
13	) Well, you haven't a						
		<b>b</b> either of us	© neither of we	d either of we			
14		t plays basketba	all.				
	@ all	<b>b</b> both	© either	<b>d</b> neither			
15	•	ion with a friend of					
	(a) he	<b>b</b> we	© his	d his's			
	Fill in gap:						
16	) We didn't see	of the children.					
17	) The Queen	came to see us.					
,	18) He went to the partyhis own.						
,	•	•					
	19) Old Mr Mazen often cuts shaving.						
20	20) We've got two books to read, but I haven't readyet.						
	Find the mistake,			H. N. WARREN			
	) I know that each o			[			
	•	am a rich man, but I don'		[			
	-	dresses, but either of th		h. [			
	•	sion with a friend of him		<u> </u>			
25	25) This loaf is stale: please give me a fresh it						



#### Glants' Grammai



الفعل عبارة عن كلمة تستخدم للتعبير عن حركة أو حالة أو حدث وتأتى بعد الفاعل ويمكن من خلاله تحديد زمن الجملة.

✓ He works hard.

✓ I will take you with me.

√ I am eating pasta now.

- 🗐 للحظ ان الفعل يتبع الفاعل من حيث المفرد والجمع
- (are were have infinitive) إذا كان الفاعل جمع يأتي بعده فعل جمع
  - (is was has v+s) اذا كان الفاعل مفرد بأتي بعده فعل مفرد (The dis was has v+s)
- √ I suppose you are right.

✓ Students are intelligent.

- ✓ He has gone home.
  - 🗐 للبد ان يكون الفعل في اللغة الإنجليزية ظاهراً بخلاف اللغة العربية التي يمكن ان يكون الفعل مستتراً مثل:
- ✓ He is a teacher. هو مدرس

لنه رحل . He is a man

مم اطباء . They are doctors

#### Forms of verbs

			<u> </u>				
الشكل	المعني	التكوين	portal control of the	en e	أمثلة		
Infinitive	مصدر	الفعل بدون أي اضافات		eat	drink	have	be
Present	مضارع	التصريف الأول للفعل قد يشبه المصدر مع الجمع أو اضافة S مع المفرد	visit (s)	eat (s)	drink(s)	have has	am-is-are
Past	ماضي	التصريف الثاني للفعل باضافة ed أو يكون غير منتظم	visited	ate	drank	had	was-were
Past Participle	اسم المفعول	التصريف الثالث للفعـل باضـافة ed أو يكون غير منتظم	visited	eaten	drunk	had	been
Present Participle	اسم القاعل	اضافة ing اخر الفعل	visiting	eating	drinking	having	being

- العظ ان : أشكال المضارع والماضي تسمى الأفعال Finite Verbs لأنها محددةِشكل ِ الفاعل أي يتغير شكلها ﴿ بتغير الفاعل المحدودة من حيث الأفراد والجمع يتغير شكلها في الماضي عن الحاضر.
- 🗐 للحظ ان : أشكال المصدر infinitive واسم المفعول Past participle واسم الفاعل Present participle يسمى بالأَفْهَا غير المحدودة Non-finites or Infinities غير المحدودة إلى المحدودة Non-finites للن شكلها ثابت لا يتغير بتغير الفاعل أو زمن الجملة.



- Ali speaks English fluently.
- speaks فعل بسيط يتكون من جزء واحد فقط (في زمن المضارع البسيط)
- > She visited us yesterday.

- visited فعل بسيط يتكون من جزء واحد فقط (في زمن الماضي البسيط)
- He is reading a novel. is reading فعل مركب يتكون من جزئين (فعل مساعد is + فعل اساسي reading
- have been studying فعل مركب يتكون من ثلاث أجزاء I have been studying English all day.
  - (فعل مساعد have + فعل مساعد been + فعل مساعد المساعد + been
  - 🗐 ويمكننا تقسيم الافعال إلى نوعان الأفعال اللازمة والأفعال المتعدبة.

Verb to have



Woodal warbs

اللفعال اللازمة: وتسمي أفعال لازمة لأنها تؤدي معنى كاملا بذاتها دون أن يتعدى أثره إلى مفعول به علي سبيل المثال:

say die fall complain happen collapse disappear appear الأفعال المتعدية: وتسمى أفعال وتعدية لأنها لا تؤدى المعنى مكتملاً بذاتها ولايد من مفعول به حتى يكتمل

معناها مثل:

Verb to do

tell give encourage defeat create obey visit complete

Helping Verbs

الأنعـــال الناقصــة مجموعة أنعال يفعل من مجموعة أنعال يكون من الأربع افعال يكون من الذي يصاغ فيه فعل الجملة، وعلى حسب الزمن الذي يصاغ فيه فعل الجملة، وعلى حسب فاعله.

He is playing tennis now. مضارع مستمر). □ مضارع مستمر). الفعل المساعدة لأنها تساعدنا في تعديد زمن الفعل.

He isn't playing tennis now. 

\( \text{n't/not} \)

\( \text{nit/not} \)

Tennis is being played now by him. ثستخدم في المبنى للمجهول بإضافة V. be للفعل وبعده التصريف الثالث

#### Verb to be

Verb to be

Infinitive	Present	Past	Past participle	Present Participle
المصدر	مضارع (التصريف الاول)	ماضي (التصريف الثاني)	التصريف الثالث / اسم المفعول	اسم الفاعل
be	am - is - are	was - were	been	being



- 🗓 يأتي مع الفاعل المفرد (am is was) أما الفاعل الجمع يأخذ (are were).
  - v. be للحظ إننا يمكننا استخدام
- 🗸 I am not a doctor, I am a teacher ڪفعل اساسي بمعني يڪون أو ڪان.
- واستخدامه كفعل مساعد ليدل علي الزمن أو النفى أو المجهول وهنا لا يترجم الفعل المساعد و يأتى بعدهم [
- √ She isn't studying at the moment.
- √ I was doing my homework.
- ✓ They were given a good lesson yesterday.

  ✓ Are you watching TV now?
- أ تستخدم be المصدر بعد الافعال الناقصة أو الأفعال التي تتبع بـ to كفعل أساسي بمعني يكون أو فعل مساعد في المحمول
  - √ Will you be with us tomorrow?
- √ They will be playing football tomorrow.
- ✓ The city will be built in 2030.
- √ The race is expected to be canceled.

والال واسي الذن النوازان





تستخدم **be** المصدر لتوجبة أمر أو نستخدم Never be / Don't be في النهي وهنا تكون فعل أساسي بمعنى كن / لا تكن

✓ Be always in time

✓ Don't be shy

- √ Never be in a hurry.
  - آ تستخدم be to + inf. للتعبير عن ترتيب مقرر (موعد) أو اعطاء أوامر وتعليمات بمعنى من المفروض ان
- ✓ Nobody is to know.

- √ You are not to do that.
- التكوين المبنى للمجمول في زمن المضارع المستمر (am is are was were) بعد (being) بعد والماضى المستمر
  - ✓ The meal was being cooked at 7 o'clock yesterday.
    منارع العام والماضي التكوين المبنى للمجمول في زمن المضارع التام والماضي التام
  - ✓ This novel has been published since I was ten.

#### **Verb to have**

Infinitive	Present	Past	Past participle	Present Participle
المصدر	مضارع(التصريف الأول)	ماضي (التصريف الثاني)	التصريف الثالث / اسم المفعول	اسم الفاعل
have	have - has	had	had	having



- ياتي مع الفاعل المفرد فى المضارع (has) اما الفاعل الجمع يأخـذ (have) والماضي (had) مع أى صيغة للفاعل
  - 🗐 يمكننا اختصار (has) إلى (s) واختصار (have) إلى (ve) واختصار (had) إلى (d)
    - v. have للحظ اننا يمكننا استخدام

- √ I have a car but he has three.
- كفعل اساسي بمعني يمتلك / يتناول / يأخذ/ .....
- و عنده استخدامه كفعل مساعد ليدل علي الزمن أو النفى أو المجهول وهنا لا يترجم الفعل المساعد وياتي بعدهم التصريف الثالث.
- ✓ She has got a car.

- √ He has lived here since 2019
- اِذَا كَانَ فَعَلَ أَسَاسَى v. have لنفي don't doesn't didn't) + have نستخدم
  - (hasn't haven't hadn't) + P.P على فعل مساعد 🝵
- ✓ I don't have a flat.
- ✓ Ali doesn't have many friends.
- ✓ Aya hasn't got any sisters.
- ✓ She didn't come because I hadn't called her.

Wise Saying

A guilty conscience needs no accuser الضمير الشاعر بالذنب لا يحتاج لوعظ

> <u>گواعد العمالگـــــــُّ</u> للحف الأول والثانی والثاث الثنوی



#### Verb to do

Infinitive	Present	Past	Past participle	<b>Present Participle</b>	
المصدر	مضارع(التصريف الاول)	ماضي (التصريف الثاني)	التصريف الثالث / اسم المفعول	اسم الفاعل	
do	do - does	did	done	doing	



- أما الفاعل المفرد في المضارع (does) أما الفاعل الجمع يأخذ (do) والماضي (did) مع أي صيغة للفاعل
  - v. do للحظ إننا يمكننا استخدام 🧻
- ✓ I do all my homework well. ✓ I did the right thing. كفعل اساسي بمعني يفعل / يقوم بـ الله عنه الله
- واستخدامه كفعل مساعد ليدل على الزمن أو النفى وهنا لا يترجم الفعل المساعد ويأتي بعدهم المصدر **l don't lik**e smoking. ✓ **Did** she **go** to school vesterday?
- 🗊 تستخدم (**do does did**) في حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد في الجملة من أجل النفي أو تكوين سؤال

de	go / visit	إذا كان فعل الجملة في المصدر (بدون أي أضافات) مع الفاعل الجمع
do	goes/ visits	إذا كان فعل الجملة منتهى بـ (s / es / ies) مع الفاعل المفرد
di	went / visited	إذا كان فعل الجملة منتهى بـ (d /ed / ied) أو فعل ماضى غير منتظم

- تستخدم (do does did) قبل الفعل الأساسي في الجمل المثبتة من أجل لتكوين صيغة توكيد (تأكيد علي الكلام)
- ✓ I do trust you.

- ✓ She did hate cowards.
- ✓ He does see life.

#### **Modal verbs**

will	can	shall	may	must
would	could	should	might	

- سميت الأفعال النّاقصـة بهـذا الاسـم لأن بعضـها يوجـد لـه حاضـر وماضي فقـط ولا يوجـد لـه تصـريف ثالـث (اسـم مفعول) وأيضاً لا يمكن أن تأتى كفعل أساسى بمفردها لابد أن يأتى بعدهم فعل أساسي ليتمم المعني.
  - وراء الأفعال النّاقصة جميعهم مصدر الفعل (بدون أي اضافات) ومن غير 📵
  - (We) مع ضميرالمتكّ لم (We) مقط وتستخدم will مع باقي الضمائر (We) مع باقي الضمائر (They, You, He, She, It)
  - √ I can carry this heavy bag.
- ✓ You might work much and earn little.
- √ We shall get there first.
- √ She won't listen to me.

GIANTS Wise Say

If you think education is expensive-try ignorance. إذا كنت تعتقد أن التعليم ثمنه باهظ جرب الجهل قد يكون أقل كلفة

ولكل طرسي اللغة الإنجليزية



#### Other modals

	have to has to	need need to	ought to dare (to)
المضارع	have to + inf. has to + inf.	need to + inf. need + inf.	ought to + inf. dare to + inf.
النفى في المضارع	don't have to + inf. doesn't have to + inf.	don't need to + inf. doesn't need to + inf. needn't + inf.	ought not to + inf. daren't + inf.
الماضي	had to + inf.	needed to + inf. needed + inf.	
النفى في الماضي	didn't have to + inf.	didn't need to + inf. needn't have + P.P	سوف يتم شرحهم في جزء منفصل

## Important Notes

للحظ استخدام so and neither مع اللفعال المساعدة

نستخدم (فاعل + فعل مساعد + so) في الاثبات لتعبر عن قيام الفاعل بما فعله الفاعل الاول نستخدم (فاعل + فعل مساعد + neither) في النفي لتعبر عن عدم قيام الفاعلان بالشيء وتساوي not + either (فعل مساعد + فاعل) = (فاعل + فعل مساعد + nor) = (فاعل + فعل مساعد + neither)

√ "I'm tired." "So am I."

- (= I'm tired too.)
- ✓ Sarah hasn't got a car and neither has Mark.
- ✓ "I don't know." "Neither do I." or "Nor do I." or "I don't either."
  - 🗐 للحظ في حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد في الجملة الأولي نضع (do does did) طبقا للفعل الأساسي
- √ "I never read newspaper." "Neither do I." (= I never read newspapers either)
  - 🗐 للحظ أن في هذه الحالة نستخدم بعد so neither فعل مساعد وليس فاعل (بعدهما صيغة سؤال)
- ✓ I passed the exam and so did Ali.

(NOT so Ali did.)



**Wise Saying** 

If the plan doesn't work, change the plan, but never the goal.

إذا لم تنجح هذه الخطة .غيّر الخطة،ولكن أبداً لا تغيّر الهدف







Choose the cor	rect answer from a, b,	c or d:			
1) How old is your	brother, Richard? He.	ten yesterday.			
(is	<b>b</b> has	© was	<b>d</b> had		
2) Little Jimmy is v	ery fast. He's just		_		
(a) to finished	<b>b</b> finished	© finish	d to finish		
<ol><li>The whole cake</li></ol>	: eaten by the c	children last Sunday.			
a has been	<b>b</b> was	© will be	<b>d</b> is		
4) Ali, you	go to that pub every da	ay?			
@ do	<b>b</b> does	© doesn't	<b>d</b> have		
5) The two boys	sitting in the gard	den yesterday.			
@ was	<b>b</b> were	© had	<b>d</b> have		
6) it hot ye	sterday?				
A Has	<b>(b)</b> Was	© Does	d is		
7) she got	a house?				
(a) Have	<b>b</b> Does	© Has	d Is		
8) The boy and the	girl in the roo	m.			
@ are	<b>b</b> is	© isn't	d are no		
9) The tables	in the house.				
a. are	<b>b</b> will	© have	d does		
10) The chair	in the garden.				
a. are	<b>b</b> is	© am	<b>d</b> were		
11) Nada, d	lown next to me.		_		
you sit	<b>b</b> sit you	© sit	<b>d</b> sits		
12) Where	your little daughter yes	terday?			
@ are	<b>b</b> was	© were	<b>d</b> is		
13) there a	ny milk in the glass?				
@ Had	<b>b</b> Have	© Was	<b>d</b> Were		
14) He has no mone	ey				
Neither do I	<b>b</b> Either have I	© I haven't neither	d I do too		
15) Have you	my new car?				
@ see	<b>b</b> seen	© seeing	d saw		
Fill in gap:			A V MANING COM MANING CANAL CANA		
16) The house	four rooms.				
17) The boys	a dog.				
,	at home all day y	esterday.			
,	playing in the pa				
LALAMAN WATER TO THE TAX TO THE T	very good yester	uay.			
Find the mista	ike, then correct it:				
21) These people h	ere is very violent.		[		
22) These two boys	s are playing tennis last	t Saturday.	[		
23) Where are they	live?		[		
24) What do he do			<u></u>		
25) Have you all been your breakfast?					



# Mark المحالية Intermediate Exercises

	Chassa the same						
-	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:						
1)		Madrid last month, on a l	-				
	@ must	<b>b</b> had	© have	<b>d</b> has			
2)	How you g	go to the hypermarket to	morrow?				
	@ did	<b>b</b> will	© shall	<b>d</b> should			
3)	I can't remember v	what she said					
	Neither do I	<b>b</b> Nor can I	© Me neither	<b>d</b> Me either			
4)	I think my brother	to come next m	onth.				
	@ can	<b>b</b> could	© will be	d will be able			
5)	These people	very stupid.					
	(a) had	(b) was	© have	d were			
6)	I don't like running		0	9			
	(a) I do, either		© Nor do I	d I don't, too			
	I went to Luxor on	_		© 1 doi: 1, 100			
	a I didn't either		© Neither did I	d So did I			
	We breakf	_	C remier did i	<b>3</b> 30 did 1			
,	a were have		© was having	<b>d</b> had			
		you those flowers?	C was naving	<b>O</b> flad			
	a Did	<b>b</b> Have	@ IMma				
	•		© Was	<b>d</b> Is			
		work very quickly last n					
	@ am	(b) had	© did	d was			
		eling well. He le	_				
	a has to		© must	d must to			
	_	drive a car in my family					
	@ was	•	© is	<b>d</b> are			
13)	Only Hany	play the piano.					
	@ can	0	© is	d were			
14)	I've never been to	Scotland. Well,					
	a neither has Tom	<b>b</b> nor is Tom	© Tom hasn't also	d Tom hasn't too			
15)	Why don't you	an effort and get up					
	@ do	<b>b</b> make	© made	d did			
	Fill in gap:						
16)		when I five.	ALTERNATION OF THE PROPERTY OF	NAME OF THE PARTY			
-	Ali doesn't						
		_	2	_			
	18) My brother is going to enter the Institute. So my sister.						
19) I went to the beach on Sunday morning did I.							
20) I watched TV last night but my sister							
Find the mistake, then correct it:							
21)	He does enjoys his	high grades in his exan	ns.				
		he old man yesterday.					
	•	n cooked at 7 o'clock ye	sterday.				
	You are not do that	_	•	[			
		ng in winter, and so do r	ny friends.	[			
				-			





	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c	or d:	A STORY
1)	She a show	er every morning be	fore school.	
,	(a) does	(b) has	© did	<b>d</b> is
2)	We talking	to James about his e	xam.	
•	(a) don't	<b>b</b> haven't	© wasn't	d aren't
3)	Where you	yesterday?		
	(a) was	<b>b</b> have	© did	d were
4)	We a beaut	iful puppy called Mai	i	
	@ was	<b>b</b> having	© did	(d) had
5)	you ever be	een to Amsterdam?		
	@ Do	<b>b</b> Does	© Have	<b>d</b> Did
6)	Are you a student?	- Yes, I		
	@ am	<b>b</b> have	© is	d 'm not
7)	She didn't see anyo	ne she knew, and	did Ahmed.	
	@ either	<b>b</b> or	© neither	<b>d</b> too
8)	He saw nobody in the	he room, and you?	•	
	@ neither did I	<b>b</b> so did I	© neither do I	d so do I
9)	you speak	three languages?		
	@ Do	<b>b</b> Does	© Were	<b>d</b> Are
10)	Toka never does he	er homework!	!	
	So does Sally	<b>(b)</b> Neither does Sally	© Sally doesn't too	d nor doesn't Sally
11)	She likes running in	n the hills. Well	•••	
	a so do l	<b>b</b> neither do I	© nor do I	d so would I
12)	We've never been t	o Italy		
	Nor did I	<b>b</b> Neither do I	© Nor have I	d So have I
13)	I would never go th	ere alone		
	Neither do I	<b>b</b> Me neither	© Neither would I	d I didn't either
14)	My daughter went t	to the U.S.A last year		
	Also went mine	<b>(b)</b> Mine either	© So did mine	<b>d</b> Mine too
15)	She can go this ver	y morning		
	@ So can I	<b>b</b> Neither can I	© Nor do I	d So do I
	Fill in gap:			
16)	I forgot to tell my w	rife. So I.		
-	_	here it is ca	ın I.	
	I had a car but he			
		cooked at 7 o'clo	ck vesterday	
-				
20		to America. Nor	ne.	
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:	AND THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY	
	_	eating that. Neither	did I.	[
	I didn't go to Londo			[
23	Tomorrow is a pub	lic holiday. You need	In't to get up early.	[
,	_	good sleep. So does l		[
25	I must to carry this	heavy bag.		





#### 4) Adjectives

الصفيات

الصفة هي كلمة تصف اللسم والضمير وتأتى الصفة قبل الموصوف أو بعد الأفعال التالية:

V. to be - look - seem - sound - appear - go - get - come - become - stay - feel - taste - smell - touch - fall - grow - turn - how

- ► He bought a new flat.
- ✓ She was a clever student. 
  ✓ He is lazy.
- ► Toka seems ill.
- ✓ He gets tired quickly.

لا يحدث أى تغيير للصفة سواء كان الموصوف مفرداً أوجمَّعاً ، مذكراً أو مؤنثاً (الصفة لاتُجمع، وصفقالمذَ كُــر هـ، أيضاً صفة للمؤنّث)

- ► He is clever.
- ✓ She is clever.
- √ They are clever.

🗐 للحظ ان الصفة قد تكون:

- hope (hopeful hopeless) / friend (friendly)
- تستخرج من اسم باضافة لاحقة suffix
- interesting- exciting boring amazing

اسم مفعول

- interested- excited bored amazed
- اسم يستخدم كصفة (لا يجمع الاسم في هذة الحالة).
- world news school girl girl school horse race.
- a forty-year man a two-day trip a ten-day break
- رقم وبعده اسم فيكون الرقم صفة للاسم
- للحظ ان يمكننا عكس الصفة باضافة بادئه Prefix

un	im im	in )		dis	r P
lucky	polite	correct	legal	loyal	regular
unlucky	impolite	incorrect	illegal	disloyal	irregular

للحظ عند وضع the قبل الصفة تتحول إلى اسم جمع ويأتي بعده فعل جمع (are - were - have - inf.)

poor	فقير	rich	غني	disabled	معاق
brave	شجاع	the poor	الفقراء	the rich	الاغنياء
the disabled	المعاقين	the brave	الشجعان		

📋 للحظ أن الصفة بمفردها لا يأتي قبلها (a - an) أما إذا جاءت قبل اللسم المفرد يعد يأتي قبلها

✓ This house is new.

✓ It is a new house.

✓ This woman is old.

- ✓ She is an old woman.
- 📋 للحظ الفرق بين الصفة التي تنتمي ed والتي تنتمي ing
- bored excited amazed interested كصفة لمستقبل الحدث doring exciting amazing interesting كصفة للمسبب للحدث boring exciting amazing interesting كصفة للمسبب للحدث وتستخدم مع العاقل والغبر العاقل للوصف )
  - 🥤 للحظ ترتيب الصفات:

a a	opinion	size	age	shape	colour	material	
an the	الرأي	الحجم	العمر	الشكل	اللون	المادة الخام	18
some	nice	small	old	round	red	iron	

- ✓ I bought a strong big round black wooden table.
  - 🗐 يمكننا تقسيم الصفات من حيث القوة إلى نوعين:
    - 🕦 صفات عادية (يمكننا ان يأتي قبلها كلمة very)

hot cold bad large tired angry

(very مفات قویة = صفة عادیة + very (لا یمکنا ان یاتی قبلها کلمة very)

boiling freezing awful huge exhausted furious

- √ He had been working all day. He was very tired (exhausted).
- ✓ Because of his awful marks, his parents were very angry (furious).





من حيث النوع تنقسم الصفة إلى نوعين: • صفة قصرة تتكون من مقطع وأحد عند اللفظ مثل: bia slow short tall short ٢ صفة طويلة تتكون من أكثر من مقطع عند اللفظ مثل: expensive comfortable dangerous valuable wonderful important 🗐 تنقسم الصفات من حيث الدرجة إلى ثلاث درجات: العادية (Positive degree) الغرض منها المصف وليس المقارنة. وتستخدم في القارنة (Comparative degree) وتستخدم في القارنة بين اثنين. صفة التفضيل (Superlative degree) صفة التفضيل للمقارنة بين أكثر من اثنين. Positive degree الصفية العادية وهي الدرجة العادية أو البسيطة التي تبين الصفة مثل: lucky happy rich 🗐 تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكي تعبر عن المساواة في الصفة. as صفة as √ Toka is as clever as Jana. √ Ahmed is as strong as a horse. تستخدم الدرجة البسيطة لكي تعبر عن عدم المساواة في الصفة. as مفة as ا √ Ali is not as clever as Ahmed. ✓ He is not as (so) rich as his brother. للحظ انه يوجد طرق اخرى للتعبير عن المساواة وعدم المساواة ..... have + the same + مسا + as ..... .... and + ..... + have + the same + ..... ...... be similar to ....... √ Toka is as old as Jana. = Toka has the same age as Jana. = Toka and Jana have the same age. Comparative degree وهي تستخدم عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على شخص أو شيء المقارنة بين اثنين وتتكون كالأتي: er than + صفة قصيرة ...... صفة قصيرة ٢ ✓ Ali is taller than Ahmed. √ Ahmed is shorter than Ali. ➤ صفة طويلة C اقل من than صفة طويلة less أكثر من than صفة طويلة more >> ✓ Mona is more begutiful than Nada. √ Nada is less begutiful than Mona. Superlative degree صفية التفضيل وهي تستخدم عندما نريد إظهار تفوق شخص أو شيء على مجموعة من الأشخاص أو الأشياء وتتكون كالآتي: the + صفة قصيرة صفة قصيرة ٢ ✓ Ali is the tallest student in the class. ✓ She is the shortest one. صفة طويلة C صفة طويلة الأقل the least صفة طويلة الأكثر the most

✓ Mona is the most beautiful girl I have ever seen.



الصفات القصيرة short adjectives						
Positi	الصفات ive	Comp	arative	255434	Superlative	
happy	سعيد	happier	than	the	happiest	
heavy		heavier	than	the	heaviest	
old	كبير أو قديم	older	than	the	oldest	
pretty	جميل	prettier	than	the	prettiest	
quick	سريع	quicker	than	the	quickest	
short		shorter	than	the	shortest	
tall	طويل	taller	than	the	tallest	

الصفات الطويلة long adjectives					
ات Positive	الصة	Comparative	Superlative		
convenient	ملائم	more, less convenient than	▶ the most, least convenient		
dangerous			▶ the most, least dangerous		
important		more, less important than	▶ the most, least important		
valuable		more, less valuable than	the most, least valuable		
wonderful		more, less wonderful than	▶ the most, least wonderful		

بعض الصفات الشاذة					
وصف positive	comparative	مقارنة ع	superlative	تفضيل	
good (right)	better	than	the best	الأحسن	
bad (wrong)	worse	than	the worst	الأسوأ	
many	more	than	the most	الأكثر	
much	IIIOI C	CITCHI	trio illost		
little	less	than	the least	الأقل	
	farther أبعد	than	the farthest	لأبعد	
far	أكثر / إضافي further	than	the furthest		

<sup>✓</sup> Ali is better than Ahmed.

#### व्यर्थिक वाकी हो हिन्दीह

(y) بعد الصفة القصيرة اما إذا انتهي بـ (e) وقبلها حرف ساكن توضع (r-st) فقط اما إذا انتهي بـ (y) مسبوق بحرف ساكن تحول إلى (ier- iest) ولاحظ مضاعفة الحرف الاخير في الصفة إذا انتهت بحرف ساكن وأحد مسبوق بحرف متحرك واحد.

small	▶ smaller than	▶ the smallest
wide	wider than	▶ the widest
heavy	▶ heavier than	▶ the heaviest
big	▶ bigger than	▶ The biggest
big	, 5.995.	The Three Laloge Alical Sea

ويمكن استخدام ess قبل الصفة القصارة:

✓ Ali is less fat than Adel.

ing والتي تنتهي ed لاحظ الفرق بين الصفة التي تنتهي نستقبل الحدث نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي ed كصفة لمستقبل الحدث

bored - excited - amazed - interested

نستخدم الصفة التي تنتهي ing كصفة للمسبب للحدث (تستخدم مع العاقل والغير العاقل للوصف )

boring - exciting - amazing - interesting

<sup>√</sup> Ahmed is worse than Ali.



 مكن أن نعدد مقدار صفة القارنة بأن يسبقها كلمات مثل: much - a lot - a bit - a little - slightly √ Toka is much more intelligent than Jana. و کلما .....کلما فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة من الدرجة الثانية + the . فعل + فاعل + صفة مقارنة من الدرجة الثانية + the The more I study hard, the higher mark I get. ✓ The harder you study, the more marks you get. ✓ The less you eat, the thinner you become. The faster you run. the earlier you arrive. استعمال صفات القارنة حالة ثانية بدلاً من صفات التفضيل حالة ثالثة ✓ Mai is the most beautiful girl in our family. (No girl) No girl in our family is more beautiful than Mai. • استعمال قاعدة as ..... as بدلاً من صفات الحالة الثالثة أو العكس. The Nile is the longest river in the word. (as ... as) No river in the world is as long as the Nile. No man in our village is as reliable as Ahmed. (Ahmed ...) Ahmed is the most reliable man in our village. @ استعمال الصفات مع ever l have ever + p.p + اسم + صفة حالة ثالثة + is the أسم/ضمير Toka is the cleverest girl I have ever seen. Jana is the most beautiful girl I have ever met. never استعمال الصفات مع اسم + than + اسم + حالة ثانية + than اسم + حالة ثانية √ I have never met a more beautiful girl than Jana. √ I have never met a girl os beautiful os Jana the ...adj. ....er of the two .... √ Toka is the taller of the two girls. • لاحظ استخدام (most) بدون (the) وهنا تكون بمعنى (very): ✓ This novel was most interesting. √ I love all my family, but my mum most of all. بعد صفات اللكية يستخدم التفضيل (most - least - worst - best) بدون ethe √ His most popular book is Giants. √ Her best novel is "Oliver". @ لاحظ الفرق بن older - elder: elder + noun (أكبر من) داخل الأسرة لا تتبع بـ than older + than the eldest + noun ✓ He is my elder brother. √ Toka is older than Mai. @ لاحظ استخدام الصفة بعد how ولكن الاسم بعد what صفة + How How old How much How heavy How high How tall = What + اسم What age What price What weight What height what ولكن الاسم بعد how ولكن الاسم بعد what الصفة young - old big - small far - near expensive - cheap الاسم size distance age price



- 1) Ali is (much more) happier than me.
- 2) Ali is (more much) intelligent than me.
- 3) I have as (many more) books as Mohamed.
- 4) I have (more much) money than Ali.
- 5) I have (less little) sugar than Ali.
- 6) I bought as (little less) sugar as Ali.
- 7) I looked bad this morning but Mohamed looked (worse bad).
- 8) I am tall but Ali is (taller the tallest).
- 9) Who is (taller the tallest) Ahmed or Ali?
- 10) Ali is (the younger the youngest) of the two boys.
- 11) Ali is (the youngest the younger) of the three boys.
- 12) Ali is (older elder) than his brother.
- 13) My (elder older) brother is a doctor.
- 14) She is the (elder eldest) of the two daughters.
- 15) She is the (eldest elder) of the three daughters.
- 16) I love all my family but I love my father (most the most).
- 17) I like all subjects but I like English (best the best).
- 18) For (farther further) information, call me.
- 19) I am a (much bit) happier than Ali.
- 20) Ali is a (good better) player in this game than me.

## BIANTS

#### 5) Adverb



نستخدم الظروف لوصف الفعل أو الصفة أما الصفة فتصف اسم

🗐 الحال أوالظرف غالباً مشتق من الصفة عن طريق إضافة (y / ly / ily) إلى الصفة:

- quiet - slow
- quietly
  - slowly

- quick
- quickly

ENERGY S

كالالالالالالالالالاتان

- happy
- happily
- easy 

  → easily
- 🗐 للحظ ان الصفة المنتهية بـ (ly) تتحول عن طريق : (in a ..... way manner):
- ودود friendly -

⇒ in a friendly way - manner

🗐 هناك بعض الكلمات تعامل كظرف وكصفة:

hard	74 / 35	daily	يومي / يومياً
fast	سريع / بسرعة	weekly	أسبوعي / أسبوعيا
low	منخفض / علي مستوي منخفض	yearly	سنوي / سنويا
high	مرتفع / علي مستوي مرتفع	early	مبكر / في وقت مبكر
nearby	مجاور/ بالقرب	late	متأخر / ف <i>ي</i> وقت متأخر
near	قريب / بالقرب	most	كثير من / كثيرا



**Wise Saying** 

A man is known by the company he keeps ما الماء بأقرانه



🗐 هناك ظروف غير منتظمة مثل:

		T .			2000
good	جيد	-	well		بشكل جيد
many / much	ڪثير من	=	a lot		كثيرا
everyday	يومي	•	every day		كل يوم
Indoor (outdoor)	داخلي / خارجي	•	indoors (outdoors)	عارج المنزل	داخل المنزل / خ





### ظــروف الكيفيــة Adverbs of manner

💼 يصف كيفية حدوث الفعل ويجيب عن السؤال بـ (كيف How ) يأتي قبل الفعل أو بعد الفعل مثل

✓ How did you do in the exam? - I did very well.

✓ What did the police do?

- The police quickly closed off the area.

well	بطريقة جيده	bravely	بشجاعة		بطريقة سيئة
quickly	سريعاً / بسرعة	slowly	بطيئاً / ببطء	wisely	بحكمة

### ظــروف المكــان Adverbs of place

🧊 تستخدم ظروف المكان لتحديد مكان أو اتجاه أو بعد حدوث الفعل مثل:

✓ I will meet her outside.
✓ There is a big factory nearby.

1	1.			,	
here	المنا	in	في	near	قريبأ
there	هناك	out	خارجأ	far	بعيدا
under	تعت	up	أعلى / فوق	abroad	في الخارج
below	تحت / أدناه	down	أسفل	about	حول / حوالي
between	بين	downstairs	الطابق السفلي	ahead	ثلأمام
inside	بالداخل	above	فوق / أعلي	around	حول
nearby	مجاور	across	عزر	back	للخلف
outside	بالخارج	away	بعيدأ	backwards	للخلف

#### طـــروف الزمــان Adverbs of time

📋 تشير ظروف الزمان إلى وقت وقوع الحدث وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة:

✓ I met him yesterday. ✓ I will visit you soon.

yesterday	امس	today	اليوم	then	اذن / ثم
tomorrow	غدأ	still	لا يزال	since	مند
now	الآن	soon	حالاً / قريباً	for	ندة
ago	منذ	every	ڪل	already	من قبل
before	قبل	last	السابق	early	مبكرأ
immediately	فورأ	yet	حتي الأن	late	متأخرأ

ونضع (be) فعلاً أساسياً توضع بعده: والفعل الأصلي والفعل المساعد أما إذا كان الفعل

√ She is still writing novels.

✓ I am still confused.





### ظـــروف التكـــرار Adverbs of frequency

🗐 تشير ظروف التكرار إلى مدي تكرار الحدث (عدد المرات) وتأتي في بداية أو نهاية الجملة أو قبل أو بعد الفعل مثل:

✓ I visited my uncle every week (weekly). ✓ I meet my friend once a week.

once	مرة	always	دائما	every	ڪل
twice	مرتين	usually	عادة	daily	يوميا
three times	ثلاث مرات	often	غالبا	weekly	اسبوعي
occasionally	أحيانا	sometimes	أحيانا	monthly	شهري
frequently	غائبأ	seldom / rarely	نادراً y	yearly	سنوي
regularly	بإنتظام	hardly	بالكاد / بصعوبة	little	قلمأ
constantly	بشكل ثابت			never	مطلقأ

تستخدم بعض ظروف التكرار قبل الفعل الأصلى أو بعد (V. be):

✓ I always get up early.





#### ظـــروف الدرجــــة Adverbs of degree

✓ He is extremely exhausted.

✓ He spoke extremely rudely.

✓ He is very young

✓ He hardly recognised us

v ne is very	young.		· ne nare	ily i ecognis	
fairly	نماماً	extremely	للغاية	enough	بشكل كافي
really	حقأ	awfully	بشدة	too	جدا
slightly	بشكل طفيف	incredibly	بشكل مذهل	such	جدأ
a little	قليلأ	amazingly	بشكل مذهل	so	جدأ
a bit	قليلأ	completely	تماما	just	فحسب / توأ
very	جدا	totally	تماما	hardly	بالكاد / بصعوبة
rather	الي حد ما	absolutely	تماما	nearly	تقريباً
pretty	إلى حد ما	terribly	بشدة	entirely	<b>کلیا</b>
quite	إلى حد ما	almost / nearly	تقريبأ	highly	بشكل كبير

🗐 للحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل الصفات العادية:

very - rather - fairly - quite - extremely - little

✓ I'm very (extremely) tired. ✓ Mr Ahmed

✓ Mr Ahmed is a very good teacher.

💼 للحظ أن **quite / fairly** تعطى معني ايجابي بينما **rather** تعطى معني سلبي :

√ It is quite cold. (I can bear it.)

 $\checkmark$  It is rather cold. (I can't bear it.)

🗐 للحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل الصفات القوية:

### absolutely - completely - entirely - totally

√ The man was completely exhausted.

✓ Mr Ahmed is an absolutely amazing teacher.

الحظ استخدام الظروف التالية قبل كل من الصفات القوبة والضعيفة:

#### really - pretty

√ This building is really big / enormous.

الله المتخدام (enough) بعد الصفة والظـرف وتعطـي معنـي إيجـابي امــاً (too) تســتخدم قبــل الصــفة والظـرف وتعطي معنى سلبي:

✓ He is strong enough to lift this bag.

✓ He is too weak to lift this bag.



الصفات القوية يكون معناها أقوى بكثير من الصفات العادية:

Ordinary	عادية	Strong	قوية	Ordinary	عادية	Strong	قوية
Clever	ماهر	brilliant	رائع	old	قديم	ancient	عتيق
angry	غاضب	furious	غضبان جدأ	frightening	مخيف	terrifying	برعب
bad	ښيءِ	terrible	فظيع	hot	ساخن	بان boiling	نى حالة غلب
big	كبير	enormous	ضخم	tired	متعب	exhausted	مرهق
happy	سعيد	delighted	مسرور	unusual	غير عادي	incredible	خيالي

ظرف الإثبات او النفي

#### Adverbs of affirmation & negation

🗐 ظروف تستخدم لاثبات أو نفي الحدث:

✓ Surely, I v	vill come.	✓ Indeed, I hope to come.				
yes	نعم / أجل	indeed	واقعا / في الواقع	not	3	
certainly	يقينا / بالتأكيد	by all means	اطلاقا	any	أي	
surely	بالتأكيد / تأكيداً	undoubtedly	لا شك في	no	ڪلا	
verily	يقينا / حقا	obviously	بوضوح	never	أبدأ	
definitely	بالتأكيد			trulv	صدقأ	

### ظروف المقارنـة والتفضيك Comparative and Superlative Adverbs

#### يمكن مقارنة الظروف مثل الصفات الطويلة

### الظروف العادية (المساواه وعدم المساواه) The positive adverbs





- ✓ Ali speaks French as well as Ahmed.
- ✓ Mona expressed her opinion as clearly as she could.

### ② The comparative adverb

CONTRACTOR		ظرف قصیر	+	than	l
more	+	ظرف طويل	+	than	A Comment
less	+	ظرف طويل	+	than	1

✓ I know you better than him.

√ We came rather than he did.

ظرف التفضيل

ظرف المقارنة

#### 3 The superlative adverb

the	+	(est) ظرف قصیر	*
the most	+	ظرف طویل	
the least	+	ظرف طويل	No.

#### 🗐 الظروف الشاذة:

badly - ill	بشکل سئ / بشکل ردئ	worse than	the worst
well	بشكل جيد	better than	the best
much	ڪثيراً	more than	the most
little	نادرا	less than	the least
late	متأخرا / بتأخر	later than	the latest
far	عنبعد	farther than	the farthest



### ملاحظات هامن على الإحوال

• عند استخدام الظروف التي تدل على النفي في بداية الجملة فإن الفعل المساعد يتقدم على الفاعل (صيغة سؤال):

Inversion after negative adverbs						
Seldom	نادرا	Not only but also	ليس فقط بل أيضاً			
Rarely	نادرا	Scarcely when	لم يكد حتى أن			
Little	علي الإطلاق	▶ Hardly when	لم يكد حتى أن			
Only when	فقط عندما	No sooner than	لم يكد حتى أن			
Only then		▶ On no account	تعت أي ظرف			
Nor	ولا	▶ On no condition	بلا ادنى شرط			

✓ She never visits Luxor

- = Never does she visit Luxor
- √ He had no sooner studied than he slept.
  - = No sooner had he studied than he slept.

: most / the most كامة كامة كامة استخدام



ظرف / صفة / اسم + the most





✓ Mai is the most beautiful girl in the class. ✓ I have the most money



ظرف / صفة + verv =



√ This book is most interesting.

√ She behaves most politely.



most of all

√ I like football most of all sports.

√ He likes Hani most of all his friends.

#### مقارنة وتفضيل الأسماء **Comparative and Superlative forms of Nouns**

بمكن اللسماء مثل الصفات:

### 1 The positive nouns

(المساواه وعدم المساواه في الاسماء)



+ few / many + little / much اسم بعد + + 25

اسم لا بعد +



√ I have as many books as Nada.

√ She has as little information as me.

+ as

than

than than

#### (2) The comparative nouns

مقارنة الاسماء



اسم بعد / اسم لا بعد fewer

اسم بعد اسم لا يعد



- √ I have more books than Nada.
- √ Nada has fewer books than me (I am).
- ✓ Mai earns less money than her sister.

less

the least

### 3 The superlative

تفضيل الاسماء



the most اسم يعد / اسم لا يعد the fewest

اسم يعد



- ✓ Toka got the most marks.
- √ Jana did the fewest exercises.
- ✓ Mona had the least furniture.



اسم لا بعد





-				
		t answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1)	Our football team	-		
		<b>b</b> better than		d the best
2)		ry clever. He's t		
	<b>a</b> intelligenter	<b>b</b> more intelligent	© most intelligent	<b>d</b> intelligentest
3)	The Nile is	. river in Africa.		
	(a) longer than	<b>b</b> the longest	© longer one	d longest than
4)	My mother's dress	is than my auni	t's.	
	@ more long	<b>b</b> longest	© longer	d the longest
5)	Their house is	from the main road	•	
	(a) the farther	<b>b</b> farther than	© the farthest	<b>d</b> farthest
6)	What was the	event in your life?		
	(a) happiest	<b>b</b> happier	© more happy	d most happy
7)	He speaks English	as as he speak	s Arabic.	
	(a) best	<b>b</b> bad	© good	d well
8)	Please, tell me son	<b>ⓑ bad</b> nething than thi	s old joke.	
	interesting	<b>b</b> less interesting	© more interesting	d the most interesting
9)	I have time	e than he does.		_
	<b>a</b> bigger		© most	d less
10)		sic I have ever heard.		
	@ more beautiful	<b>b</b> less beautiful	© the most beautif	ul d most beautiful
11)	She looked	and ran away from the	dog.	
	(a) fright	<b>b</b> frightened	© frightening	d frighten
12)	That's the biggest	building I've		
	never seen	<b>b</b> ever saw	© ever seen	d never saw
13)	I don't think this w	inter is last win	ter.	
		<b>b</b> as cold		<b>d</b> colder
14)	You need to be	tall to be a good ba	asketball player.	
	(a) absolutely	<b>b</b> extremely	<b>©</b> completely	<b>d</b> entirely
		ot difficult. It's th		
	@ easier	<b>b</b> more easy	© easiest	d most easy
*** - Table   10 miles	Fill in gap:		A STATE A STAT	,
16)	She is a good cool	k. She cooks	****	
-	_	ooks than her sister.		
		amazing teacher.		
-		feel exhausted.		
20)		angry when I return	ied home late.	
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
21)	My work is much b	ad than yours.		[]
22)	Hossam is in a bac	need to do something i	new as he is boring	. []
23)	False friend is bad	than open enemies.	ū	[]
	He is the fastest of			[]
251	You can all drink a	s much so you want		r 1





Andrew A	Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c o	or d:	
1)	I can't stand this p	erson. He is		
	@ boredom	<b>b</b> bored	© boring	<b>d</b> boringly
2)	This man is	Mr Ali, perhaps talle	er.	
	as tall as	<b>b</b> so tall so	© as tall so	d so tall as
3)	She has been ill, b	out she certainly	today.	
	(a) look best	<b>b</b> looks better	© looks best	d is best
4)	This pullover is to	o big. I want a	one.	
	@ most small	<b>b</b> more small	© smaller	<b>d</b> smallest
5)		are nice, but ours are		
	a nicer than	<b>b</b> nicest	© the nicest	d the nicer
6)	What a pity she liv	es so far. I wish she liv	ved	
	a nearest	<b>b</b> nearer	© more near	d most near
7)		nice, but that one is		
-	(a) the nicest	<b>b</b> more nice	© nicer	d more nicer
8)		ood, but ours is		
	@ much better	<b>b</b> more better	© much best	d much best
9)		ıt Brian's is		
	(a) much worst	<b>b</b> more worse	© much worse	<b>d</b> worst
10	) "Fat" Maggie is no	ot she used to	be.	
		<b>b</b> so fat so		d so fat than
11	_	today. She ca		
	a seem better	<b>b</b> looks better	© seems best	<b>d</b> looks best
12		s not that one		
		<b>b</b> so tall so		d so tall
13	) There was a big c	rowd. It was tl	han ever.	
		<b>b</b> more crowded		<b>d</b> crowder
14	) My detergent was	hes much tha	n that.	
	, .	<b>b</b> more whiter		<b>d</b> whiter
15	•	uch than this.	•	
		<b>b</b> more careful		<b>d</b> carefuler
-	Fill in gap:			,
16	) Ahmed looks olde	er he is		
	) Summer is			
	•		tordou	
	-	petter than he was yes		
		e visited Luxor before.		
20	) Aya is a twenty	old girl.		
	Find the mistake	, then correct it:		
21	) This work is tired		· AAAA JARAHAN AAAA	[
	) The two boys are			<u></u>
	•	easy. I can study it eas	sv.	ſ
	,	tirely angry when I ret	_	[
		early to buy bread.		[





> Choos	se the correc	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1) My fat	her treats u	s in way.	-	
	nd	_	© friendly	d a friend
2) Karee	m's exercis	es are of all, in		
		<b>b</b> the better		<b>d</b> best
_		eat, the healthier you k	•	
(a) less	_	<b>b</b> least	© most	d much
4) I've ne	ver seen su	ch a film.		
@ funn	iest	<b>b</b> funny	© funnier	d fun
5) The	fat yo	u eat, the healthier you		
-	-			<b>d</b> much
	es fish		•	
a a fe	w	<b>b</b> the fewest	© most	d the less
	of tw		O	
		_	© the tallest	d taller
_		our friend.	0	
	_	<b>b</b> the better	© better	<b>d</b> best
_		please. I can he	•	<b>3.333</b>
	Iness	_	© hard	<b>d</b> hardly
_		erested in cartoons.	<b>©</b> ************************************	© marany
			© the most	<b>d</b> most
_		ly, the marks yo		@ mosi
_	<b>,</b>	<b>b</b> good	© better	<b>d</b> best
_		ook is his book.		© 233.
, _		<b>b</b> most popular		<b>d</b> more
		e price as I had		9
a as		<b>b</b> same		<b>d</b> more
_	fast runner	. I can't run as fast as		
(a) he		(b) him	© he is	<b>d</b> her
_	to find	a job, but he had no luc		
		<b>b</b> tried hardly		<b>d</b> hard tried
Market Company		U mod marany	Charaly mod	
Fill in			1.1	and the same of th
-		ally boring. It's the most	boring movie I've	seen.
17) Mona i	s ta	ller than her sister.		
18) No so	oner	she watched TV than	she slept.	
19) Is that	size big	for you, Ali?		
20) Which	is	Cairo or Alexandria?		
		then correct it:		
	•		l-iA-	r
, ,		is one of my every day h		[
,		; the least heat there's	ın the air.	[
,		ore care and interest.	t book over	[
•		as Ahmed's the greates very good-organised. It		[
	Could was	voi v goog-oi gailised. It	. vvaə ii uitlui	





أدوات العرفة والنكرة (6) Definite and Indefinite articles

#### أدوات النكرة indifinite articles: A & An

نستخدم a / an = one بمعنى وأحد وتأتى قبل اللسم المفرد النكرة (غير محدد)

- [عبل اللسم المفرد الذي يعد المبدوء بحرف ساكن كتابة ونطق/
- ▶ a boy a girl a man a woman a hand a lion a bus a farmer a university a uniform a useful..... a European.....
  - 🏢 نستخدم (an) قبل اللسم المفرد الذي يعد المبدوء بحرف متحرك كتابة ونطق (a, e, i, o, u):
- an orange an egg an insect an apple an hour an umbrella an honest an squash

## الاستخسام

• نستخدم a / an قبل الاسم الفرد عند ذكره لأول مرة يكون نكرة أي غير محدد

✓ I read a novel in the library.

√ I saw 

a boy playing in the street.

- نستخدم a / an لنشير إلى الوظائف د ما عند عند ما عند المنافق و ا
- √ He works as a teacher.
  - 🕡 نستخدم a / an لنشير إلى وأحد من عدد أو إلى النوع

✓ I bought a pen.

- √ I ate an apple.
- ✓ He is an English man.

✓ She is an engineer.

عدم a / an قبل الجنسيات إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد عدم

نستخدم a / an قبل الصفات إذا جاء بعدها اسم مفرد يعد

- ✓ She is an Egyptian woman.
- √ Toka is an intelligent girl.

✓ Ali is a clever boy.

a / an مع تعبيرات السرعة والثمن والنسبة.

▶ Once <mark>a</mark> day	eighty kilometers an hour
twice a week	sixty meters a minute
Three times a month	twenty pounds a kilo
▶ four times <b>a</b> year	ten pounds a liter

such / so بعد a / an نستخدم 🐠



اسم يعد مفرد + a - an صفة عن so صفة + اسم يعد مفرد a - an



✓ He is such an honest boy.

√ He is so honest a boy.

🛦 نستخدم a / an قبل ادوات التجزئة المفرد

					,
a cup of	فنجان من	a loaf of	رغيف من	a tin of	علبة من
a glass of	كوب من	a bar of	قطعة من	a slice of	شريحة من
a bottle of	زجاجة من	a kilo of	كيلو من	a packet of	لفه من
a jar of	برطمان من	a bag of	ڪيس من	a sheet of	فرخمن
a pair of	زوج من	a dish of	طبق من	a tube of	أنبوبة من

نستخدم a / an بعد What للتعجب



اسم يعد مفرد + صفة + What a - an

4

✓ What a pretty girl.

✓ What a hard question!



## Ciants' Crammar

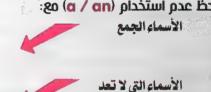


ا نستخدم a / an (عند الاشارة الي شخص واحد)

She decided to become a Muslim.

للحظ عدم استخدام (a / an) مع: الأسماء الحمع

- √ They are clever students.
- √ I saw strong men in the factory.
- ✓ Yesterday, we bought nice furniture.
- ✓ I like to gain information.
- ✓ Honesty is one of his traits.



الأسماء العنوبة

#### أداة المعرفسة

#### The definite article: The

🧻 نستخدم (the) قبل اللسماء التي تعد مفرد أو جمع وابضا مع اللسماء التي لا تعـد واللسـماء معنوبــــة للتعريـــف أو للتحديد:

The boy - the boys - the car - the cars - the news - the bread - the money



Charteren. Ž.

£ ....

- التحديد the نستخدم
- The little girl who is wearing a dress is Toka.
  - نستخدم the عند ذكر الاسم مرة ثانية (يكون في الجملة الاولى نكرة وفي الجملة الثانية معرفة)
- She gave me a present. The present was nice.

نستخدم e ملامع الصفة في الدرجة الثالثة (التفضيل)

the best	the tallest	the biggest	the shortest
the most	the least	the newest	the oldest

عبد الصفة لتشر إلى الجمع (بأتي بعدهم فعل جمع) the نستخدم

the poor	الفقراء	the young	الصغار	the dead	الموتي
the rich	الاغنياء	the old	كبار السن	the disabled	المعاقين

The poor are in a bad need to the help of the rich.

و نستخدم the مع جمل القارنة: كلما ...... كلما .....

The more you study, the higher marks you get.

نستخدم the قبل الصفات التي تدل على الجنسية لتدل على الشعب

the English	الشعب الانتجليزي	the Irish	الشعب الايرلندي
the Egyptian	الشعب المصري	the Spanish	الشعب الاسباني

الأسماء الفريدة من نوعها the من نوعها من نوعها

the sun	الشمس	the moon	القمر	the sky	السماء
the world	العالم	the earth	الارض	the sphinx	ابو اڻهول

معينة عد أفعال معينة لله نستخدم the قبل الآلات المستقية بعد أفعال معينة

listen - play - learn - teach

✓ Jana plays the guitar.

√ He teaches me the drum.



Wise Saying

Avoiding failure is to avoid progress. تجنبك للفشل يعنى أنك تتجنب التقدم



### Glants' Gramma

- و نستخدم the مع الاكتشافات و الأختراعات (لكن عند الحديث عن بيع أو شراء أو إصلاح جهاز فلا تأخذ (the)
- ✓ The computer is the most useful invitation.
- √ I bought a computer yesterday.

1
١

the	city	المدينة	the station	الحطة	the capital	العاصمة
the	club	النادي	the weather	الطقس	the cinema	السينما
S North Control of the Control of th		**			ع أسماء الهيئات والنظمات	**

شتخدم the مع أسماء الهيئات والمنظمات البنوك والفنادق والألقاب:

 the government	الحكومة	the police	الشرطة	the king	الملك
the press	الصحافة	the ministry	الوزارة	the lord	اللورد
the navy	الاسطول	the army	الجيش	the Hilton	هلتون

نستخدم the مع أسماء البلاد الركبة والتي تحتوي على

#### republic - state - union - kingdom

- ✓ the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia.
- √ the Republic of China

✓ the United Arab Emirates.

√ the USA

🖚 نستخدم the قبل سلاسل الجبال والأنهار والبحار والمحيطات والصحاري والجزر والمناطق الجغرافية:

the Red Sea	▶ the Nile	the North Pole		
▶ the Mediterranean Sea	▶ the Pacific	▶ the South Pole		
▶ the Siwa Oasis	▶ the Alps	▶ the Middle East		
▶ Lake Nasser	▶ Cairo University	▶ Mount Everest		

للحظ عدم استخدام the مع الدول والقارات والمدن الصغيرة، المدن الكبيرة والبحيرات والخلجان والحيال المفردة وكذلك لا تستخدم مع الشوارع والطرق والمبادين والأجياء

(1) نستخدم the مع التعبيرات الزمنية

▶ in the morning	in the evening	in the afternoon
in the present	▶ in the past	▶ in the future
▶ at night		الدظ ان night لا تأذذ 🍵

@ نستخدم the مع الاتحاهات وقبل أسماء الصحف والكتب القدسة

▶ the north of	شمال	in the east	فی شرق
▶ the south of	جنوب	in the west	في غرب
▶ the Bible	الانجيل	▶ the times	جريدة التايمز

the نستخدم the قبل الأماكن عند استخدامها لغير غرضها (إذا كان الذهاب للمكان للغرض الاساسي منه لا نضع the)

- ✓ She was sent to prison because of her crimes.
- We went to the prison with our father to visit a relative of ours.

on the state of th		) نستخدم the مع الأعداد الترتيبية
> the first	▶ the next	▶ the sixties
> the second	▶ the last	▶ the seventies

**Wise Saying** 

If you want to live a happy life, tie it to a goal, not to people or objects. إن أردت أن تعيش حياة سعيدة ، فاربطها بهدف ، وليس

بأشخاص أو أشباء





#### لا نستخدام أداة No article

عدم استخدام أي أداة (a - an - the) قبل بعض الأسماء

glass - football - love - English - Summer - plastic

### Usage



و لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) مع الأسماء المعردة المعنوبة:

beauty	love	freedom	happiness	peace	evil
شئت من أجله	نهاب للغرض الذي أننأ	الأماكن إذا كان ال	a - an - the) قبر	نكرة أو المعرفة (e	لا نستخدم أي من أدوات الـ
school	prison	church	university	mosque	hospital
				لغرض نضع the	للحظ في حالة اختلاف ا

- √ We go to school for learning.
- √ He went to the school to ask about his son.
  - لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a an the) مع الأسماء المعدودة والغير معدودة بوجه عام (جمع يشير للكل) animals birds water braed women men
  - ④ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a an the)مع الألعاب الرياضية والأنشطة بوجه عام وغير محدد

volleyball basketball football tennis handball

⊙ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)مع المواد الخام بوجه عام وغير محدد

plastic wool wood iron silk alass € لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)مع أسماء الطعام والشراب بوجه عام وغير معدد

iuice rice milk meat bread

أ للحظ في حالة التحديد نضع the:

- √ I like to drink tea.
- ✓ The tea you bought was very tasty.

◊ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a − an − the)مع المواد الدراسية

science English Arabic art chemistry history ◊ لا نستخدم اي من أدوات النكرة أو العرفة (a - an - the)مع أسماء اللغات

> English Germen Japanese

French Spanish ◊ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the)مع الوجبات بوجه عام وغير محدد

lunch breakfast dinner supper

أ للحظ في حالة التحديد نضع the:

- ✓ I always have dinner with my parents.
- I invited my friend to the dinner.

€ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) قبل الأيام والشهور وفصول السنة

Summer Sunday Winter Spring Autumn May ☑ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a - an - the) قبل اسماء القارات الدول والمدن والأسماء العلم:

King Farouk **Egypt** Ahmed Africa Cairo

☼ لا نستخدم أي من أدوات النكرة أو المعرفة (a − an − the) مع وسائل المواصلات في حالة وجود حرف الجر by:

✓ He always goes to school by taxi.

🗐 للحظ في حالة استخدام حرف الجر in - on نضع بعدهم علامة ملكية.

✓ He always goes to school on a taxi.







E	Choose the correct	answer from a b c or	d	
-	England and France			
•			© an	(d) no article
2	England is Er		Can	d no article
	<b>a</b>	(b) an	© no word	d the
8	has made th	e world a smaller plac	ce.	
	(a) A plane	(b) Planes	© The plane	d This plane
4	I had exciting	g day at work last wee	ek	•
	(a) an	<b>b a</b>	© no article	d the
6	He gave a pen and a	ruler, but per	did not work.	
	<b>(a)</b>	(b) an	© the	d no article
6	lunch we had	d together was delicie	ous.	
	(a) The	(b) <b>a</b>	(c) no article	d an
0	teachers in r	ny school are kind an	d helpful.	
	@ The	<b>b</b> An	© A	<b>d</b> No article
8	novel I read I			
	An	<b>b</b> no article	© The	<b>(d) A</b>
9	He got a job as	bus conductor.		
	a no article	(b) an	© the	<b>d a</b>
10	Nada travelled to	USA last year.		
	<b>a</b>	(b) an	© the	d no article
00	The Scottish and	English have a hist	tory of conflict.	
	a the	<b>(b) q</b>	© an	d no article
Q	I saw a little girl, but	girl didn't kno	ow her way.	
	<b>a</b>	<b>b</b> the	© an	d no article
QE	She hasItalia	n name.		
			© the	d no article
Q	Scientists think that	there is link be	etween pollution and	cancer.
-			© the	d no article
<b>de</b>	Cairo iscapita	al city of Egypt.		
1	a no article	<b>(b) a</b>	© an	d the
	Fill in gap:			
16	This is first t	ime that tourists have	e seen the Pyramids.	
	Would you like			
	Amira has a piano		nd works well	
	They are talking to			
	I read a book,			
	Find the mistake, the			
21	He got a job as the e			
22	I met the old man on	my way home. The ol	d man was strange.	
28	An exams are always	s very stressful for us	i.	
24	My sister enjoys play	/ing a guitar.		
26	A school holidays ar	e starting soon.		[



# 2 Intermediate Exercises Mark

Mark

				The same of the sa
G	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	or d:	
1	It's United N	lations vehicle. There	are different ones.	
	(a) the	<b>(b) a</b>	© no article	d an
2	He got his degree fr	rom university	in Finland.	
	<b>a</b>	(b) an	© the	d no article
3	I'd like to buy a new	flat, but flats	are so expensive.	
_	<b>(1)</b>	<b>b</b> an	© the	d no article
4	Mr. Hany goes to	school on foot.	He is an active teache	er.
	(a) an	(b) the	(C) (a)	d no article
5	My uncle arrived on	Sunday after	my birthday.	
_	(a) an	<b>b</b> the		d no article
0	You must never look			
	<b>a</b>	<b>b</b> the	© an	d no article
V	My parents always g	give meuseful	advice before travelli	ng for long hours.
	(a) number of	(b) an	(C) <b>q</b>	d) no article
8	youth play in	nportant roles in the i	progress of all nations	j.
	No article	<b>b</b> The	© A	<b>d</b> An
Ų	Mohammed Salah is	one of best f	© A ootballer in the world.	
	(a) no word	(b) <b>a</b>	© the	(d) an
U	∜ They builth	ouse near the farm as	s they like the view of	plants.
	(a) a	<b>b</b> an	© the	d no article
Q1	I think the Nile is the	longest river in the w	© the vorld. Are there	rivers longer than it?
		(b) an	(c) the	d no article
<b>U</b>	are always \	ery stressful for mos	st students.	
4	(a) An exams	<b>b</b> Exams	© A exams	d The exams
16	wonderful pi	cture!		
90	@ What	<b>b</b> What a	© How booklet in front of her	d How a
U	He asked the libraria	an to lend him	booklet in front of her	•
	(a) the	<b>b a</b>	© an	<b>d</b> some
	Students at schools		niforms.	
		<b>b</b> an	© the	d no article
	Fill in gap:			OFFICE AND AND
16	There is good	d book in the library.		
16	I live in Arat	Republic of Egypt		
16	Who invented	hicycle?		
	Ahmed's father is			
	I'm reading ir		FFFERE WITHOUT THE STANDARD AND ADDRESS OF THE STANDARD AN	THE WAS
	Find the mistake, t	***************************************		
2(1	I want the cup of coff	fee with little sugar.		[]
44	At night, we can see	a moon in the sky.		[]
43 44	I live in an Egypt.	_		[]
44	I like diving in a Red	Sea.		[]





**Q6** What time is an Maths lesson this afternoon?

		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
BIA	dvanced	Exercises

Mark Clusi pui

25

		********	****** **** *** *** **
Choose the co	orrect answer from a, b, c	or d:	
1 Fear is	universal weakness.		
		© the	<b>(d) a</b>
Mr Hassan is	<b>(b) no article</b> better of the two tea	achers.	
<b>a</b>	(b) an		<b>d</b> no article
My father alway	ys tells mevaluabl	le advice.	
(a) a	<b>(b)</b> an	© the	<b>@</b> no article
4 supper	r I had with the American	delegation is	unforgettable.
@ An	<b>(b) A</b>	© The	<b>(d)</b> No Article
€ Egypt has	unique location in the		
(a) the	<b>(b) (a)</b>	© an	d no Article
6 Sara sent me.	SMS just now.		
	<b>(b)</b> an	© the	<b>d</b> no article
My sister has a	flat on 2 <sup>nd</sup> floor.	0.11	
<b>@ a</b>	<b>(b)</b> an	© the	d no article
4 Ispent	. three-week holiday in Sh	narm.	
(a) a	<b>(b)</b> an	©the	d no article
Yesterday, my		useful story. I	t had useful pieces of advice.
a an	<b>(b) a</b>	© the	<b>d</b> no article
<b>1</b> 0 water	is essential for all people		(A) No ordinla
(a) A	(b) An		No article
<b>10</b> I like to go to the	he countryside and enjoy	beau	ty of Nature.
<b>@ a</b>	<b>b</b> the		<b>(d)</b> no article
<b>12</b> Someone who	's brokenleg find	Is it difficult to	o walk.
(a) a	(b) an	©the	<b>d</b> no article
<b>Q</b> Aya studies fo	ur hours a day. "a" in this	sentence me	eans  (d) less than one
@ per	<b>b</b> more than one		d less man one
	new friend recently.	O	<b>a</b> no article
(a) the	<b>(b) a</b>	© an	(d) No at ticle
	hundred pounds.	O 11	(d) no article
<b>a</b>	(b) an	© me	W 110 difficie
Fill in gap:			
16 This man worl	ks for eight hours	day.	
<b>10</b> It's not safe to	o live inan old ho	use.	
<b>16</b> I went to	school to talk to the he	admaster to	let my kid leave early yesterday.
16 The radio sho	w host says that f	teenagers ar	e bullied at school.
	ow of the flat was broken		
	stake, then correct it:	Address Address	
And the same		. a con	[
A Subject Whi	ch I like most is English.	+	[
	mework before I went ou		[
de Cairo is one o	f most polluted cities in thate are 15 pounds the kilo.	ic world.	
THE Dananas	are 10 pourios are kilo.		



Last week, he was talking in a lesson and the teacher was angry with him. [.....

GIANTS

حروف الجر Prepositions (7)

### حروف حرغير مستقلة

هي حروف مرتبطة بكلمة معينة سواء كانت اسم / صفة / حال / ضمير

### حروف حر مستقلة

هي حروف لها معني لا تـ تبط بكلمة معينة



حروف ج المكان حروف جر الزمان

about	عن	down	إلى أسفل	across	عبر	near	قريب
above	فوق	except	ماعدا	after	بعد	over	فوق
in	في	for	لأجل	before	أمام / قبل	past	عبر / بعد / وراء
at	عند	from	من	among	وسط	round	حول
on	على	out	خارج	without	بدون / بلا	since	مند
to	إلى	in spite of	بالرغم من	between	بين	through	خلال
with	مع	into	إلى الداخل	against	ضد	till	حتى
by	بواسطة	of	من	beyond	مابعد	up	إلى فوق
behind	خلف	off	بعيدا عن	inside	في الداخل	towards	بانجاه
below	تحت	opposite	مقابل / أمام	outside	في الخارج	under	أدنى
like	مثل	until	لغاية	beside	بجانب		
	***************************************		***************************************		• • • •		

### حروف الحر المستقلة

## حروف چر الزمان 🛕

in ;	ترات اليوم / الشهور / المواسم/ السنير	مع ف	in the morning/ in the evening / in the afternoon
	رن / اوفات معينه	/ القر	in April / in 2019 / in the winter / in the 8 <sup>Th</sup>
			century.
			in the past / in the beginning
on	أيام/ التاريخ الكامل	مع الا	on Sunday / on December, 25th 1985
at	ساعة وبعض الفترات الخاصة	مع ال	at six o'clock / at noon / at midday / at midnight
			at night/ at the end of
after / before	اقبل ا	بعد،	after the meeting / before six o'clock
during			during the lesson
between / fro	من إلى الي	بين ا	between four and six / from 2015 to 2020

🗐 للحظ الاختلاف بين:

on time

in time في الوقت المحدد بالضبط

قبل الوقت

√ It's better to come in time.

✓ Don't worry; the train will arrive on time.



Wise Saying
"Optimism is the one quality more associated with success and happiness than any other."
التفاؤل هو الميزة الأكثر ارتباطا بالنجاح والسعادة من أي

شيء آخر



## Ciants' Crammar

## حروف چر الکان B

The state of the s		
مع القارات / الدول / المدن / داخل الأماكن in	Þ	in Africa / in France / in Luxor / in the school / in
		a boat / in the flat
on / above أعلي سطح	•	on the desk / on the roof / on the island
at المكان الصغير والتجمعات	Þ	at the bus stop / at the back / at the wedding
under / below / beneath	•	under the table / below the signature
بين (مكانين أو أكثر) between / among	>	between the table and the chair / among people
in front of / behind أمام / خلف	•	in front of the door / behind the wall
next to / near / beside / by	•	next to the club / near the house / beside the
بجوار / بجانب		door / by the river
up / down اعلي / أسفل	Þ	up that ladder / down the road
along / opposite بطول / مقابل	•	along the beach / opposite the cinema

## حروف جر الوسيلة

by	مع الأشخاص والوسائل	Þ	by car / by bus / by taxi / by air / by Nada
in	مع وسائل الموصلات	Þ	in a car / in a taxi
on	مع وسائل الموصلات	Þ	on a bus / on the ship / on my bike / on foot
with	مع الآلات والوسائل وأجزاء الجسم	Þ	with a hammer / with your hand
in	مع اللغات	Þ	in French / in Arabic / in English

🗐 للحظ اختلاف حروف الجر مع الوسائل:

by - in - on

🗊 تستخدم by مع وسائل المواصلات إذا لم يسبقها أداة (an / the ) صفة ملكية):

√ I go to school by bus (by car).

√ I go to school in a bus.

√ I go to school in the car.

### حــروف الجـر الغير المستقلـة

حروف الجريد الأسناه والألعال والسنات Grammar

Perpositions after nouns, verbs and adjectives

	Preposit	د الأسماء		حروف الجر بعد	
cause of	سبب	increase in	زیادة فی	a solution to	حل اـ
reason for	سببك	decrease in	نقص في	an obstacle to	عائق لـ
the popularity of	شعبية الـ	the matter with	الخطأ في	damage to	تلف في
the problem of	مشكلة الـ	wrong with	الخطأ في	an answer to	حل 1
the aim of	هدف الـ	apology for	اعتذارعن	a reply to	رد علی
a supply of	مؤن / إمداد	an effect on	تأثيرعلى	advantage to	ميزة لـ



	Preposit	ions after adjectiv	عد الصفات  es	حروف الجر بـ	
brilliant at	رائع في	annoyed with	متضايق من (شخص	responsible for	مسئول عن
bad at	سيءِ في	furious with	غاضب بشدة من	famous for	مشهور ب
terrible at	سيءِ / فظيع في	bored with	يشعر بالملل من	good for	مفید ئے
wonderful at	رائع في	familiar with	مألوف لـ	ready for	مستعد ك
good <mark>at</mark>	ماهر في	angry with	غاضب من (شخص)	qualified for	مؤهل لـ
clever at	ماهر في	disappointed wit	خاب أمله h	bad for	ضارك
hopeless at	ميئوس منه	pleased with	مسرور من	sorry about / for	آسف بشأن
proud of	فخور بـ	delighted with	مسرور من	mad about	مهووس بـ
frightened of	خائف من	crowded with	مزدحم ب	sad about	حزين بشأن
full of	مليءِ ب	satisfied with	راضي عن	excited about	مثارمن
scared of	خائف من	dependent on	معتمد علي	worried about	قلق بشأن
terrified of	مرتعب من	keen on	مهتم بـ	happy about	سعيد ب
ashamed of	خجلان من	rich in	غنيب	crazy about	مهووس بـ
afraid of	خائف من	interested in	مهتم ب	curious about	فضولي بشأن
fond of	مغرم بــ	involved in	متورط في	enthusiastic about	متحمسك
full of	ممتلئ بـ	kind to (good to)	عطوف مع	well-known to / for	مشهور ب

🗐 في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات نستخدم .to + inf:

happy / sad / glad / pleased / lucky / relieved / amazed

✓ It is difficult for her to get up early.

حروف الجر بعد الأفعال Prepositions after verbs						
find out about	يعرف عن	search for	يبحث عن	complain to	يشكو لشخص	
wonder about	يتساءل بشأن	apologise for	يعتذر عن شيء	belong to	يخص	
tell about	يخبر شخص عن	hope for	يأمل في	apply to	يتقدم بطلب لشخص	
think about / of	يفكر في	blame for	يلوم علي	object to	يعارض علي	
dream about / of	يحلمب	apply for (a job)	يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة	intend to	ينوي	
hear about / of	يسمع عن	work for	يعمل لدي	apologise to	يعتذر لشخص	
complain about	يشكو من	hear from	يتلقي أخبارا من	get to	بيصل إلى	
know about	يعرف عن	protect from	يحمي من	consist of	يتكون من	
talk about	يتحدث عن	suffer from	يعاني من	die of	يموت بسبب	
read about	يقرأعن	result from	ينتج من	accuse of	يتهمب	
warn <mark>about</mark>	يحذرمن	prevent from	يمنع من	deal with	يتعامل مع	
result in	يؤدي إلى	differ from	يختلفعن	rely on	يعتمد علي	
succeed in	ينجح في	crash into	يصطدم ب	depend on	يعتمد علي	
believe in	يؤمن بـ	cut down	يقطع (الأشجار)	concentrate on	يركز علي	
laugh at	يسخرمن	take off لابسه	تقلع للطائرة / يخلع ه	go on	يستمر	
help in / with	يساعد في	take place in	يحدث	look on	يتصفح الانترنت	
go <mark>up</mark>	يصعد	take part in	يشارك	clear up	يوضح / يحل اللغز	

ألأفعال الأثية يأتي بعدها .fo + inf

agree	يوافق	threaten	يهدد	promise	يعطي وعد	hope - wish	يأمل
arrange	يرتب	decide	يقرر	refuse	يرفض	fail	يفشل
decide	يقرر	learn	يتعلم	want	يريد	manage	يتمكن
expect	يتوقع	plan	يخطط	offer	يعرض	prepare	يجهز

<sup>√</sup> Toka hopes to be an engineer.

<sup>√</sup> Jana promised to study hard.





## حاول أن تفهم وتميز ما يلي جيداً والحظ الفرق

### Preposition tricks

- 206	>~~~~	mm			
201		00000000		ہا تن	1
1517	444444	mm	كاا	-	1
	******	,,,,,,,,	1		=
			-		

	hosinon a	ICAS LICAS
help + inf.	يساعد	▶ He helped me do my homework.
help to + inf.	يساعد	▶ He helped me to do my homework.
help in+ ing	يساعد في	▶ He helped me in doing my homework.
help with + n	يساعد في	▶ He helped me with my homework.
turn on	يشغل	Turn on the TV. I want to watch the news
turn off	يفصل	▶ Always turn off devices after use.
turn down	يقلل / يخفض	It is so cold, turn down the air - conditioning, but don't turn it off.
turn up	يرفع / يعلي	It is so hot, turn up the air-conditioning.
turn down	يرفض	I asked him to go with me but he turned down.
give out	يوزع	▶ The food and drink are given out to the poor.
give off	ينتج/يطلق	▶ The fire gave off a lot of heat.
give up	يستسلم / يقلع عن	Never give up, whatever hardships you face.
give away	يتبرع	The children gave away their toys for charity.
trade with	يتاجرمع	▶ We trade with China.
trade in	يتاجرني	▶ We trade in / deal in vegetables.
hear of / about	يسمع عن	▶ Have you ever heard of this writer?
hear from	يتلقي أخياراً من	My friend traveled abroad and I haven' heard from him till now.
angry with	يغضب من	I am angry with my friend.
angry about	يغضب بشأن	I am angry about what he has done.
found out	يكتثف	I found out that I was mistaken.
find out about	يعرف بشأن	If you want to find out about this writer, search Google.
blame for	يلوم علي	▶ He blamed me for coming late.
blameon	يلقي باللوم علي	He blamed his bad result on his bad friend.
run out (بدون مفعول)	ينف 1 / ينتهي	One day oil will run out.
run out of تحتاج مفعول	ينفذ / ينتهي	▶ We will run out of oil.
	help + inf. help to + inf. help in+ ing help with + n turn on turn off turn down give out give off give up give away trade with trade in hear of / about hear from angry with angry about found out find out about blame for blameon run out (بدون مفعول)	help + inf. help to + inf. help in+ ing help with + n  turn on turn off  turn down  give out give off  give up  give away  trade with trade in hear of / about hear from angry with angry about  found out blame for  blame for  blame for  blame for  blame for  curial in in inf. help to + i







	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	r <b>d:</b>	MANAGEMENT .
1	The letter I wrote wa	ıs full mistake	s.	
	(a) in	<b>b</b> of	© off	<b>d</b> with
2		t yet. I'm waiting	_	•
	(a) at			<b>d</b> for
3	_	a space to park his o	ear.	
		<b>(b)</b> up	© forward	<b>d</b> after
4	0	e reform of agricultu	re.	
	(a) at	(b) in	© of	<b>d</b> to
6	Is Toka happy	getting the full mar	k in English?	
	(a) for			<b>d</b> in
6	_	n popular read	ders?	
	(a) for		© of	<b>d</b> by
7	0	writing exciting sto	ories.	
	(a) for	_	© to	d on
8	_	son the popul	0	
	(a) for	<b>b</b> with	© of	<b>d</b> in
9	_	ut she is not very	_	
		<b>b</b> interested		<b>d</b> lazy
10	She is most famous.			
	(in	<b>b</b> with	© at	<b>d</b> for
10		y friend because he	•	
	(a) to	<b>b</b> from	© at	<b>d</b> with
12		s wrong. I apologised	_	nistake.
	(a) to	<b>(b)</b> with	© at	d for
16	A balanced diet is g		O	
-	@ for	<b>b</b> in	© at	d about
14	_	getting to phone you.	_	
	(a) by		© to	<b>d</b> for
16		that she had w	_	
	about			d of
	Fill in gap:		BATANANANAN TORRATTA TARAHAN SANTA	PRINCIPAL AND A STATE OF THE ST
06		ry proud this	massive engineering	nroject
			massive engineering	g project.
	Are you excited			
		solving these		
16	Samira is very inter	ested medicir	ne and wants to be a	doctor.
20	The explorers were	looking diam	onds.	
Selection .	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		:
20	Do vou agree on vis	it my relatives in Luxo	or?	[
-		cancer two years ag		[
-		ncrease by prices lat		[
-	I must applicate of		_	ſ



Q Do you know the cause for his weakness? Mark المالية Intermediate Exercises

		. Ushing a second	
Property of the Parket	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1	I can't go to the fifth floor today. I'n	n exhausted.	,
		© up	d at
2	Cutting trees causes damage to th		
	O .	© away	d down
3	What do you think is the best solution	the problem?	
_		© to	d in
4	When I speak Italian, all the others in the c	lass laugh m	ie.
_	(a) with (b) about	© at	d to
6	My father works an international oi	il company.	
_		© to	<b>d</b> for
6	Mai is always very kind animals.		
_		© with	d of
7	I felt quite excited as the plane took	from the airport.	
_	(a) up (b) on (c)	© off	(d) at
8	Some people believe ghosts.		
_		© with	d about
9	I'd never heard him at all until last	week.	
		© of	<b>d</b> for
10	This is a difficult period but it won't go	forever.	
		C up	<b>d</b> down
QQ	Nobody knows the real reason for the film'	s popularity	children.
	(a) with (b) to (	© for	d of
12	In 1918, millions of people all over the world	ld died Span	ish flu.
		© at	<b>d</b> with
13	He was arrested trading drugs.		
		© with	d of
14	You should apologise to your teacher	forgetting your	homework.
	(a) for (b) on (	© about	d at
15	Did Aya apply that job in the com	pany?	
	(a) on (b) at (	© for	<b>d</b> in
· magel	Fill in gap:		
16	I was annoyed him for losing my bo	ook.	
-	What's the reason your low grade		
	That little black car belongs my und		
	There has been an increase the nu		iting Egypt this year
		imber of tourists visi	iung Egypt uns year.
20	My little brother is terrified birds.	**************************************	
	Find the mistake, then correct it:		
21	She managed of work out the problem in n	o time.	[
22	Can you help me find an answer of this con	nplicated problem?	
23	Seif stopped watching the match and turne	ed on the T.V.	[
24	Don't go way. The match will start in ten mi	inutes.	ſ.

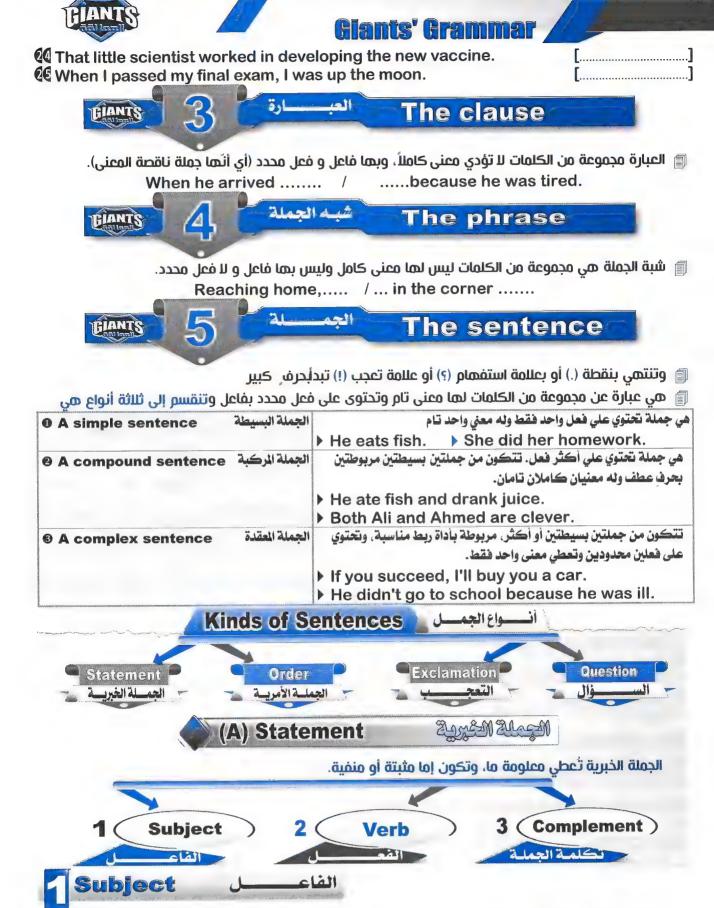


[.....]

He usually left us without say a word.



choose the c	correct answer from a, b	, c or a:	
They lived	22 Baker Street.		
(a) at	<b>(b)</b> in	© on	<b>d</b> with
He is \	with his new car.	· ·	
proud	<b>(b)</b> angry	© terrified	<b>d</b> pleased
Let's look	<b>b</b> angry the internet to find	out more information	about this writer.
(a) for	<b>b</b> in	© on	
	r his phone number. I h		him for ages.
@ of	<b>b</b> for	© at	_
I prefer tea	coffee.	<u> </u>	
	<b>b</b> to	© against	<b>d</b> over
I really	to using mobiles while	e driving.	
	<b>b</b> refuse		(d) hate
You don't obje	ect late tonight,	do vou?	
(a) worked	<b>(b)</b> to work	© working	(d) to working
The detective	<b>b</b> to work will the myster	v of who was respons	ible for the crime.
a get up	<b>b</b> clear up	© make up	d give up
The popularity	y Mohammed Sa	alah has increased re	cently
	<b>b</b> from		d to
The careless	student blamed his fail	ure his mothe	
	<b>b</b> for		d about
	the age of Sada		
@ in		© at	<b>d</b> by
We could run	out oil in the ne	vt twenty years	
@ of	<b>b</b> from	© with	<b>(d)</b> in
	orward from yo		
	<b>b</b> to hearing		d with hearing
He promised	all his lessons.	C on nearing	will nearing
			(A) advada
	<b>b</b> to studying		<b>d</b> study
	est known the ha		
@ for		© to	<b>d</b> like
Fill in gap:			
I succeeded	sending that e-m	nail at six o'clock p.m.	
There are plar	ns rescuing the	important monument	S.
			s that we can easily trea
	fe today is different		
-	inted him for be	•	
***************************************		enig lazy.	
_	ake, then correct it:		
	turn the lights of when		[
Do not go clos	e for that dog. It is not f	riendly.	[
He walked for	a long time till he finally	ant at his destination	



هو من يقوم بالفعل وقد يكون:

اسم

Cairo is a big city.

Lions eat meat.

Ali plays tennis.



▶ He is tall.	▶ She stud	dies hard.	They have a house.	ضمير فاعل
It isn't my car. N	line is red.	▶ My bag	is big but hers is small.	ضمير ملكية
Someone robbe	d this bank.	▶ Everyboo	dy seeks to make money.	ضمير غير محدد
This is a book.	These a	e my son.	That was a bus.	ضمير إشارة
The poor live a n	niserable life.	▶ The disa	bled need care.	صفة
My father is a te	acher.	<b>Our</b> hou	se is very big.	صفة ملكية + اسم
This car is very	old.	▶ That bui	lding is huge.	صفة إشارة + اسم
There is a boy co	oming. > Th	ere were pe	eople crying yesterday.	There
The owner of the			,	عبارة اسمية

### 

- الفعل عبارة عن كلمة تستخدم للتعبير عن حركة أو حالة أو حدث ويأتي بعد الفاعل ويمكن من خلاله تحديد زمن الحملة:
- ✓ He works hard.
  ✓ I will take you with me.
  ✓ I am eating pasta now.
  العظ أن الفعل يتبع الفاعل من حيث المفرد والجمع
  - (are were have infinitive) جمع یأتی بعدہ فعل جمع یأتی بعدہ فعل جمع
    - (is was has v+s) اذا کان الفاعل جمع یأتی بعدہ فعل مفرد



## Complement تكملة الجملة

تكملة الجملة وتأتي بعد الفاعل والفعل (و لا يشترط وجود تكمله قد يكون فعل للزم) قد تكون

▶ I saw Ali.	He is	doctor.	اسم
I fixed the table.	▶ She bo	ought a dog.	applianteres
▶ I met her. ▶ /	Aya called us.	▶ We will invite them.	ضمير مفعول
I saw someone near our	flat.   I didn'	t find anyone in the club.	ضمير غير محدد
We should help the poo	. They a	are clever.	صفة
I traveled yesterday.	▶ He came ea	rly.	ظرف زمان
I lived here last year.	Aswan is a	quiet city. I was born there.	ظرف مكان
They ran quickly.	▶ She spoke l	oudly.	ظرف كيفية
	Ve sold our car.	Ali met his relatives.	صفة ملكية + اسم



I like this colour.

I met that person before.

صفة إشارة + اسم



الجمالة الأمريلة

هي جملة تبدأ بفعل أساسي في المصدر في حالة الإثبات Pon't - Never وبعدهما المصدر في حالة النفي ⑤
✓ Open the door. ✓ Don't waste your time. ✓ Never come late again.



- 🗐 هي جملة لا ترتبط بتكوين معين أو ثابت وهدفها التعبير عن التعجب
- ✓ How kind of you!

  ✓ Oh! V
- ✓ Oh! What a lie!
- √ How wonderful it is!
- ✓ What a fool he is!
   ✓ What lovely eyes she has!
   ✓ How silly they are!



السؤال المبدوء بفعل مساعد أو ناقص A question with Yes / No & answer

🗐 هو السؤال الذي يبدأ بفعل مساعد وتكون إجابته بــ Yes or No أو ما يساويهما

الأفعال المساعدة أو الناقصة	المضارع	الماضي	<b>AND 1</b>	
V 1	am - is	was	V4 inc	
V. be	are	were	V+ ing	
V. have	have - has	had	P.P	
V. do	do - does	did		
	will	would		
	shall	should		
	can	could	Inf.	
Modal verbs	may	might		
	must	had to		
	have to - has to	had to		

### كيفية عمل السؤال باستخدام الأفعال الساعدة

🗐 إذا كان في الجملة أي من الأفعال المساعدة السابقة يتم تقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل "طريقة المقص".

🗐 إذا لم يوجد بالجملة فعل مساعد أو ناقص نستخدم ما يلي:

do	go / visit	إذا كان فعل الجملة في المصدر (بدون أي إضافات) مع الفاعل الجمع
does	goes/ visits	إذا كان فعل الجملة منتهى بـ (s / es/ ies) مع الفاعل المفرد
did	went / visited	إذا كان فعل الجملة منتهى بـ (d /ed/ ied) أو فعل ماضى غير منتظم

🗐 يتم حذف الـــ ,Yes من الجملة ومع ,No يتم حذف الـ nt.أما إذا وجد No بعدها جملة مثبتة يتم عكس السؤال.





#### Test yourself

## Change the following sentences into questions

1	Yes, they are playing tennis.
Q	Yes, he is a teacher.
€	Yes, they've got their books.
0	No, she hasn't got her doll.
6	No, he wasn't at Cairo yesterday.
0	Of course, Eman is studying Maths now.
9	No, I'm not listening to music.
8	Sorry, he wasn't at school.
Ø	Sure, it is my favourite toy.
10	Yes, I'm ten years old.
10	Certainly, this is my pencil.
12	Yes, we <u>have</u> Maths every day.
16	Yes, they always go to Alex.
14	Yes, Ali and Ahmed <u>meet</u> once a week.
16	Yes, Mona collect <u>s</u> stamps.
16	Yes, she <u>has</u> a car.
16	Sure, he <u>saw</u> me buying the books.
16	No, I manag <u>ed</u> to solve it.
16	Yes, Jana do <u>es</u> her homework every evening.
20	Yes, they <u>had</u> eggs and toast for breakfast in the morning.
20	Yes, Aya <u>went</u> to the cinema.
	No, I didn't have meat and rice for lunch.
	No, he <u>never</u> won a prize.
-	<u> </u>

## GIANTS

## **Giants' Grammar**

2

#### الســـؤال المذيـــل Question Tag

- السؤال المذيل عبارة عن سؤال قصير يضاف في نهاية الجملة الخبرية لزيادة التأكيد ومعناه "أليس كذلك" أو "هل أنا على صواب".
  - 🗐 يتكون السؤَّال المذيل من فعل مساعد وضمير فاعل طبقاً لفاعل الجملة.
    - 🧻 إذا كانت الجملة مثبتة يكون السؤال المذيل منفياً والعكس.
- يكون دائماً الجزء الثاني ضمير فاعل ولا يمكننا استخدام الأسماء. إذا جاء اسم مذكر عاقل يحول (he) إذا جاء ألم مؤنث عاقل يحول (she) واسم غير عاقل مفرد (it) والجمع عاقل أو غير عاقل إلى (they).
  - 🗐 للحظ عدم تحويل (۱) إلى (you) والعكس في السؤال المذيل.

√ Toka speaks English well, doesn't she?



 ?ضمیر فاعل +فعل مساعد منفی ,..... فعل مثبت + فاعل

 ?ضمبر فاعل +فعل مساعد مثبت ,..... فعل منفی + فاعل



- ✓ Jana is a clever girl, isn't she?
- ✓ Dalia has typed the letters, hasn't she?
- ✓ Ali won't be late, will he? ✓ I shall visit you, shan't !?
  - 🧊 في حالة عدم وجود فعل مساعد نستخدم ( do / does / did ) حسب زمن فعل الجملة.
- ✓ They came by car, didn't they?✓ People like making money, don't they?
  - الحظ اللجابة على السؤال (أولوية اللجابة للجملة المثبتة Yes والجملة المنفية NO)

## Mona is sick, isn't she?

Yes, she is.

No, she isn't.

### The boys never liked dancing, did they?

- ► Yes, they did.
- No, they didn't.
- أ الكلمات الآتية few / little / never / seldom / hardly / rarely / no longer / neither تعبر عن النفى ولذلك يكون السؤال المذيل مثبتاً .
- ✓ I will never speak to her again, will !?
- √ They rarely visit Japan, do they?
- I'd rather have tea, wouldn't !?
  - √ We'd like to eat fish, wouldn't we?
  - √ You'd better stay in bed, hadn't you?
  - !t's stopped raining, hasn't it?
  - √ It's running fast, isn't it?





- anyone / someone /somebody / everyone /everybody / no one nobody ) إذا كان الفاعل (they) في السؤال المذيل مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:
- ✓ Everybody has finished the test, haven't they?
  - ✓ No one is here, are they?
  - إذا كان الفاعل (something / nothing / anything / everything) نستخدم (it) في السؤال المذيل مع وراعاة الإثبات والنفى:
  - √ Something stops me, doesn't it?
- ✓ Nothing can change the fact, can it?





### 1- للحظ استخدام (had / has / have) في السؤال المذيل

- 🗐 إذا كان (has / have / had) فعل مساعد فتستخدم هذه الأفعال في السؤال المذيل مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:
- ✓ I haven't finished my homework yet, have !?
- ✓ Mona has never studied her lessons, has she?
- The children had been to their school, hadn't they?
  (has / have / had) كفعل أساسي بمعني يملك يمكن استخدام
  أو (do / does / did) ولكن يفضل (do / does / did) مع مراعاة اللإثبات والنفى:
- ✓ I have a camera, don't I (haven't I)? ✓ He has a camera, doesn't he (hasn't he)?
- √ He had a camera, didn't he (hadn't he)?
  - إذا كان فعل الجملة (had / has / have) كفعل أساسي بمعني آخر غير يملك نستُخدم فقط (do / does / did) مع مراعاة الإثبات والنفي:
- ✓ I have a letter from my uncle, don't !?

\_\_\_\_

Manager 1

- ✓ Ahmed has a cup of tea, doesn't he? ✓ Toka had lunch at home, didn't she?
  في حالة وجود (do / does / did) نستخدم فقط (has to / have to / had to) في السؤال المذيل مع
  مراعاة الإثبات والنفى:
  - ✓ I have to leave now, don't !? ✓ Aya has to work hard, doesn't she?
  - √ Lions had to be kept in cages, didn't they?

### 2- للحظ تكوين السؤال المذيل في حالة وجود جملتين

- اذا احتوت الجملة الأساسية علي فعل مــن أفعــال الــرأي مثــل (......) I think/I believe/I hope/I expect الأثبات والنفي: يوضّع السؤال المذيل علي الجملة الثانية ولكن مع مراعاة أن الجملة الأولي تؤثر من ناحية الإثبات والنفي:
- ✓ I believe it's going to rain, isn't it?
- ✓ I don't think Ali will win the match, will he?
- ✓ I expect Mai never tells lies, does she?
- أن حالة وجود أداة ربط (if after when...) فإن السؤال المذيل يتبـع الجملـة التـى لا تحتــوى علـى أداة الربط. مع مراعاة أن الجملة الأولي لا تؤثر من ناحية الإثبات والنفى:
  - √ When he came home late, my dad wasn't happy, was he?
  - ✓ I'll help you if you ask, won't !?

### Test yourself

2000	1) He isn't friendly,?	14) You'd better have fruits,?	?
200	2) Ali's gone home,?	15) I had a serious disease,	?
4 300 40	3) This water's hot,?	16) Lions like eating meat,	
ě	4) You said goodbye,?	17) Nada set the table,	
14.00	5) Everyone saw her,?	18) You haven't met Aya,	
		19) Jana didn't arrive yesterday,	
7 1000	0) 1 4111 41 043	20) Toka never read this novel,	
	// It liked filedt,	21) No one could recongise him,	
The party of the	8) He has a new car,?	22) Nothing can be achieved	7
	9) They won't go with us,?	22) Ali and Hani mot again	2
	10) This shop's very expensive,?	23) Ali and Hani met again,	
	in the people can are	24) He is too heavy to play,	
		25) A few people arrived,	
	13) We had to stay at a hotel?	26) Little money was lost,	!



1	You'll come with us	5,?		
_	will you	<b>b</b> you will	© won't you	d don't you
2	You go to London e	every day, you?		
	@ don't	<b>b</b> won't	© can't	<b>d</b> aren't
•	She doesn't live he	re, she?		
	@ doesn't	<b>b</b> will	© does	<b>d</b> did
4	I don't think he will	visit us, he?		
	<b>a</b> do	<b>b</b> will	© won't	d don't
5	You aren't very tall			
	@ aren't		© do	<b>d</b> have
6	There's a lot of coff	ee, there?		
	aren't		© hasn't	d doesn't
7	You'd like to go,	you?		
	@ didnt		© would	<b>d</b> won't
8	They won't come ye			
4	@ won't	<b>b</b> will	© would	<b>d</b> do
9	Jenny's in Italy,	she?		
44	@ doesn't		© aren't	<b>d</b> hasn't
		idied her lessons,	she?	
44	@ does		© hasn't	d doesn't
	You wanted to go, .	you?		
44		<b>b</b> did	© aren't	d didn't
12	They've got a dog,	they?		
44	@ haven't		© do	<b>d</b> will
18	You come here ofte			
44	@ come	<u> </u>	© don't	<b>d</b> haven't
4	They'll tell you tomo	orrow, they?		
44	@ won't		© will	<b>d</b> don't
16	Alison, you'd like to	go on this trip,	you?	
44	@ didn't		© wouldn't	d won't
<b>U</b> O	Martha's in the U.S.			
44	@ doesn't	<b>b</b> isn't	© aren't	d hasn't
UU		e the fact, can?		
90	(a) them	<b>b</b> nothing	© they	<b>(d)</b> it
U		people, there?	_	
44	@ were	<b>b</b> weren't	© aren't	d hasn't
<b>U</b> E		ondon before,y		
66	@ don't	<b>b</b> have	© haven't	d aren't
ZU	It's very crowded in	_	_	
44	isn't there	<u> </u>	© is there	d is it
40	He drank milk,			
66		<b>b</b> isn't it	© didn't he	d doesn't he
44		.A. last year,?		
66	doesn't she		© didn't she	d weren't she
43	He eats meat every			
64	@ doesn't it		© isn't it	d isn't he
यस		hed the test, haven't	?	_
	(a) she	<b>b</b> he	© it	d they



### السؤال بأداة أستفهام Wh Question

هو السؤال الذي يستخدم فيه أداة استفهام للسؤال عن شيء محدد وتختلف الإجابة باختلاف أدوات الاستفهام:

- تعديد وحذف الإجابة المطلوب السؤال عنها (مثل when يتم حذف (حرف الجر + الزمن).
- حدد الفعل المساعد بالجملة وان لم تحتوي على فعل مساعد ناتى بـ do / does / did.
  - و حدد الضمائر التي يتم تحويلها مثل we إلى you.
  - 3 في حالة استخدام who للسؤال عن الفاعل نحذف الفاعل وتبقى الجملة كما هي.
- أما إذا استخدمت who للسؤال عن مفعول نطبق صيغ السؤال بتقديم الفعل المساعد على الفاعل.



## 

		20077000000000000000000000000000000000	هام إلي:	🗐 تقسم أدوات الاستف			
· American	ادوات استفهام أساسية						
N	أداة الاستفهام	المنافق المنافق	. Park - Control of the Control	متى نستخدمها ؟			
1	What	ما/ماذا؟		تسأل عن: المفعول / الفعل / الحدث			
2	Who	من ؟		تسأل عن: الفاعل (شخص)			
3	Which	اي ؟		تسأل عن: الشيء الغير عاقل			
4	Where	این ؟		تسأل عن: المكان			
5	When	متى ؟		تسأل عن: الزمان			
6	Why	? làt	becau	تسأل عن: السبب والإجابة se - to - for			
7	How	ڪيف ؟		تسأل عن: الحال أو الطريقة أو الوسيلة			
8	Whose	ملك من ؟		تسأل عن: الملكية			
	talisti in na jalista en jalistististi. Satar saturati saturati saturati saturati saturati saturati	رعية منانات معتمد	أدوات استفهام ف	en i opera i i popo posebbe anticoleticajo e i genero e por en pari de posebbili se coli			
9	What colour	ما لون؟	<u>(W</u>	تسأل عن: اللون (للتخيير hich colour			
10	What time	في أي وقت؟		تسأل عن: الوقت الحدد			
11	What size	ما مقاس؟		تسأل عن: المقاس			
12	How old = (What ag	ge)	كم العمر ؟	تسأل عن: السن أو العمر			
13	How high = (What he	eight)	كم ارتفاع ؟	تسأل عن: الارتفاع			
14	How many		ڪم عدد؟	تسأل عن: العدد			
15	How tall = (What he	-	ما طول؟	تسأل عن: الطول / شجر / أبراج / إنسان			
16	How much = (What pr	rice )	ما كمية / كم ثمن؟	تسأل عن: الكمية أو الثمن			
17	How often = (How ma		ڪم مرة؟	تسأل عن: عدد مرات عمل الشيء			
18	How long = (What le		ماالدة؟	تسأل عن: المدة			
19			ما عمق؟	تسأل عن: العمق			
20	How fast = (What sp		ڪم سرعة؟	تسأل عن: السرعة			
21			ما حرارة؟	تسأل عن: الحرارة			
22	How far = (What di	stance)	ما المسافة؟	تسأل عن: السافة			



Test yourself

Change the following sentences into questions

They sometimes go to the club.	(Where) (How often)
Nada plays tennis every Sunday.	(What) (\Vho) (When)
Jana swims with Toka in the swimming pool.	(Who) (Who) (Where)
4 Ahmed travels to Aswan by train.	(Who) (Where) (How)
Nada washes the dishes in the evening.	(Who) (When) (What)
I play squash three times a week.	(How often) (What)
They are travelling to Luxor by plane.	(Where) (How)
Farouk is going to the bank to get some money.	(Who) (Why)
The king lived in a big castle.	(Who) (Where)
He saw a nice film on TV at ten o'clock yesterday.	(What) (When)
I went to the supermarket to buy some groceries.	(Where) (Why)
We ate fish and rice yesterday.	(When) (What)
Mona watered the flowers this morning.	(What) (When) (Who)
Ahmed will fix his car tomorrow.	(When) (Who) (What)
They will visit the Egyptian museum tonight.	(When) (What)
10 Jana will go to school on foot.	(Where) (Who) (How)
10 I travel to Paris twice a year.	(How often)
I have studied English for three hours.	(How long)
The second of the art art art are	(What size)(How much)
Control Linda lives with her parents.	(Whom) (Who)
You should study hard to achieve your goals.	(Why) (What)
I drank three cups of tea in the cafe.	(How many) (Where)
<u> </u>	•



الأزمن

تنمَّسُ الأزمنة إلى ثلاثة أمَّسام رئيسية:



Past BILL

**Future** WATERAL !

🗐 ولكل قسم من هذه الأقسام الثلاثة أربعة فروع كما يلى:

Present	Past	Future
Present simple	Past simple	Future simple
Present continuous	Past continuous	Future continuous
Present perfect	Past perfect	Future perfect
Present perfect continuous	Past perfect continuous	Future perfect continuous

المضارع البس

#### Grammar

Present simple

Present Continuous

زمن المضارع البسيط

The Present Simple Tense

### **Formation**



### (in Active)

يتكون من التصريف الأول للفعل بدون إضافة مع (We / You / They فاعل جمع )

أ و إضافة (s- es - ies) للفعل مع (t / He / She / الفعل مفرد )

watches	goes	brushes	dresses	
carries	studies	cries	tries	

نضيف للفعل (es) إذا انتهى بـ: (ch - sh - ss - o - x) نضيف للفعل (ies) إذا انتهى بـ y مسبوقا بحرف ساكن وتحذف y

- ✓ I play football on Fridays.
- √ They watch films at home.
- ✓ He plays football on Fridays.
- ✓ Jana watches films at home.

### Formation -



### (in Passive)



Object + (am / is / are) + P.P



- √ Football is played on Fridays.
- ✓ Films are watched at home by Jana.

### Negative



- ✓ I don't play football on Fridays. ✓ They never watch films at home.
  - (never +inf. + s / doesn't +inf.) مناطر مفرد) من (He / She / It) يتكون الجملة في النفي مع (He / She / It) فاعل مفرد) من
- ✓ He doesn't play football on Fridays.
- ✓ Jana never watches films at home.

### Question |



📋 يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في المضارع البسيط من:



? ...... ? الفاعل inf.



🗐 مع (L/ We / You / They) مع (Do) مع (Do) ا/ فاعل جمع ) نستخدم (Does) نستخدم (Does).



🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في المضارع البسيط من:

? ...... inf. الفاعل do \_ does اداة استفهام



√ What do you do on Fridays?

√ What does Jana watch at home?

√ When do you play football?

√ Where does Jana wotch films?

Key words

🗐 تأتى أظرف التكرار قبل الفعل الأساسي أو بعد V. be

🗐 بمكن أن تأتر أظرف التكرار في بداية الحملة أو نهايتها

		الله المحمد الله والقي الطرق المحدور في جداية الطبقة الا مفاديقة
always	دائماً	Seif always cries when he is hungry.
		▶ Toka is always tired in the evenings.
usually = be used to + V + ing	عادة	Jana usually gets up early.
		▶ Jana is used to getting up early.
often	غالبأ	▶ She often eats pasta.
sometimes	أحيانا	I sometimes walk to school.
rarely - seldom - scarcely	نادرأ	▶ He rarely comes late.
never	أبدا	▶ I never drive into town.
W.		I am never late for school.
ever (في السؤال)	حتى الآن	Do you ever drive a car?
every	ڪل	▶ Every Friday, Jana goes to the club.
له الأيام) now	الآن (في ۵	<ul> <li>ا work as a teacher now.</li> </ul>
still	ما زال	▶ She is still smart.

🗐 تعبر الكلمات التالية عن النفي never / rarely / seldom / scarcely / hardly وتأتى قبل الفعل أما إذا كانت أول الجملة يأتي بعدها فعل مساعد (صيغة السؤال).

- √ She never tells lies.
- √ I seldom see my uncle.

Usage



✓ The earth goes round the sun.

- Never does she tell lies.
- Seldom do I see my uncle.
  - يستخدم للتعبير عن الحقائق.
- √ Water boils at 100° Centigrade...
  - پستخدم للتعبير عن عادات في المضارع.

Usually = (be) in the habit of + inf. + ing = (be) used to + inf. + ing

= Jana is used to getting up early. Jana usually gets up early.

= Jana is in the habit of getting up early.

🖆 تستخدم no longer بمعنى (لم يعد) بدلا من used to ويأتي بعدها الفعل في المضارع البسيط:

✓ Toka used to live in Cairo. (no longer)

= Toka no longer lives in Cairo.

any more / any longer بدلاً من used to بدلاً من any more / any longer مع نفي الفعل في المضارع البسيط وتأتى في نهاية الحملة:

Toka used to live in Cairo. (any more / any longer)

Toka doesn't live in Cairo any more / any longer.

🗐 للحظ فعل الجملة الثانية: جملة التعقيب بعد but now تكون مضارع وعكس الجملة الأساسية ويستخدم do - does إذا كان فعل الجملة ليس V. be أما إذا كان V. be إذا كان فعل الجملة ليس

She used to get up early, but now she doesn't.



- ✓ I used to play with children but now I don't.
- ✓ She used to be active, but now she isn't. ✓ I used to be rich but now I am poor.

  و ستخدم للتعبير عن الأعمال المتكررة والمواقف الدائمة.
- ✓ Amr travels to work by train every day.
  ✓ She works as an engineer.
- ✓ Toka never gets up early.
  - يستخدم مع الروابط الزمنية في المضارع عندما تكون الجملة الثانية تعبر عن المستقبل.
- ✓ After my father finishes his work, he will take us to the club.
- ✓ As soon as Mr. Ahmed finishes this book, he will do a pilgrimage.
- √ I won't come until you call me.

- يستخدم مع if الحالة الأولى والصفرية.
- √ If you study hard, you will succeed in your exams.
- √ If you heat water, it boils.

- پستخدم مع الجداول الزمنية في الستقبل وجداول المواعيد.
- ✓ The lesson starts at 7 o'clock. 
  ✓ The plane takes off at 2 o'clock.
  - پستخدم للتعبير عن عدد مرات القيام بالحدث
- ✓ I get up at 8 o'clock every morning. ✓ How often do you go to the dentist?
- √ Julie doesn't drink tea very often.
- √ He usually goes away two or three times a year.
- 👁 يستخدم مع الأوامر والتعليمات

- You set the table and I will wash dishes.
  - يستخدم مع أفعال الشعور والحواس والإدراك والعاطفة والتفكير والملكية بدلاً من المضارع المستمر.

like, dislike, love, think, seem, look, know, feel, understand, want, need, hate, see, forget, prefer, believe, mean, taste, hear, have, possess, own..etc.

- ► Toka is liking surfing the internet. (x)
- Toka likes surfing the internet.



المضارع البسيط (V.be في المضارع البسيط 🍵



صفة + (am not - isn't - aren't) النفي ⊃ (am not - isn't - aren't)



✓ She is a doctor but she isn't clever.

🗐 للحظ شكل **V. have** في المضارع البسيط



V. have (have - has) ⊃ النفي (don't have - doesn't have) + المراضمير



√ He has a house but he doesn't have a car.

🗐 هناك بعض الأفعال اللغة الانـجليزية دائماً ما تستخدم في أزمنة البسيط سواء (مضارع / ماضي / مستقبل)

apologise - suggest - advise - promise - accept - agree - refuse

√ I promise I won't be late.

(NOT I'm promising)

- What do you suggest I do to keep fit?
  - ⇒ I suggest that you go on a diet."
  - الله الفرق بين الحدث دائم الحدوث (نستخدم المضارع البسيط) ولكن إذا كان الحدث مؤقااً أو غير معتاد الستخدم المضارع المستمر .
- ✓ My father usually goes to his work by car but today he is going by bus.



زمن المضادع المستمر

## The Present continuous Tense

### (in Active) Formation A 2 am ⊃ is he / she / it we / you / they are ✓ I gm playing football at the moment. √ Jana is doing a research now. (in Passive)



√ She is doing an operation.

(v. + ing)

## Formation (

Object + (am / is / are) + being+ P.P

√ A research is being done by Jana. √ Football is being played at the moment.

## Negative \_\_\_\_\_

(isn't - aren't - am not) + V + ing √ They aren't reading novels.

√ Jana isn't doing a research now. ✓ Let's go out now. It isn't raining any more.

### Question 118-11

🗐 يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في المضارع البسيط من

(Am / Is / Are) الفاعل V + ing ......?

√ Are you playing football now?

Yes, I am.

√Are you enjoying the party? X No. I am not.

🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في المضارع البسيط من:



? ...... V + ing الفاعل (am / is / are) أداة استفهام

√ What are you doing? √ Why is she crying?

⇒ I am watching TV.

⇒ Because her leg is aching.

### Key words and and

وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن المضارع المستمر وللحظ أن كلمة still تأتي بين جزئي الفعا

	50		and or many parts. One of column and a second
at present			At present, we are studying French.
at this momer	في هذه اللحظة 1t	Þ	I'm eating the meals at this moment.
now	الأن	Þ	Toka is crying now.
still	مازال	Þ	She is still reading.
Look!			Look! This pipe is leaking water.
Listen!	اسمع	•	Listen! He is singing a nice song.
Watch!	شاهد	Þ	Watch! The train is coming.
Be quiet!			Be quiet! The baby is sleeping.
always	دائماً (للتعبير عن الضايقة)	Þ	My little brother is always bothering me.
arrange	يرتب	Þ	I arrange I am having dinner with my fiancée.
today	اليوم	Þ	You're working hard today.
this week /	هذا الأسبوع /	Þ	The company I work for isn't doing so well this year.
this year	هذا العام		



### Usage

الاستخدام

واكل طرسي الغق الإطبارق

	<ul> <li>نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن أحداث تعدث في لحظة الكلام مع كلمات مثل :</li> </ul>
_	now - at this moment - at present - still - look - listen - watch - hurry - quick
<b>■</b> ✓	Listen, He is singing. ✓ Now they are playing. ✓ Look! The train is coming.
- Commercial Commercia	ليس من الضروري وجود كلمات دالة علي الزمن لكن الضروري اللحساس باستمرارية الحدث مثل:
	Keep quiet please, as I am studying. ✓ Quick! The bus is leaving.
	Whole is Air I don't know I tillik he is reduilig at the library.
Commence of the Commence of th	© نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن ترتيبات في المستقبل.
	We are travelling to London tomorrow as arranged. They bought the tickets. They are having dinner outside.
	mey bought the dekets. They die having diffier outside. • نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث مؤقت
<b>←</b> ✓	At a café, I like drinking coffe but this time I am drinking tea.
And the second second	€ نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير حدث يحدث اليس في لحظة الكلام، لكن في فترة معينة (هذا الأسبوع)، هذا العام،.
<b>-</b>	Hani will travel to America, so he is learning English this year.
The second secon	[هذا معناه أنه بدأ في الدراسة ولم ينته منها بعد]
<b>←</b> ✓	We are studying biology this term.
	🖸 نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن حدث في تزايد.
<b>■</b>	The pollution of the world is rising very fast.
	The problem of pollution is getting more and more serious.
<b>√</b>	Do you get better? النظ النطأ 🛪 Are you getting better?
	🕤 نستخدم المضارع المستمر للتعبير عن عادات سيئة مع ظروف التكرار.
✓	He is always leaving his clothes on the floor.
	الأحظ الإختلاف Notice The Difference
P. proproproproproproproproproproproproprop	Notes on the simple & continuous present
,	اً `هُذُه اللَّفَعَالَ لَا تَسْتَخَدُمْ فَي ٱللَّزَمَنَةُ المُسْتَمَرَةُ هَذَه اللَّفَعَالَ تَدلَ على الحالة وليس فعَلَ أو خُركة:
<b>√</b>	verbs of the senses: feel, hear, see, smell, taste, notice, etc.
•	<u>verbs of emotions and preferences</u> : like, dislike, love, hate, fear, mind, want, wish, need, prefer, admire,etc.
	verbs of perception, belief, knowledge, ownership: think, believe, know,
	understand, expect, remember, forget, hope, have, own, belong (to), etc.
$\checkmark$	verbs which describe permanent states: be, cost, weigh, seem, appear,etc.
	🖠 بعض الأفعال منها تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة طبقاً للمعنى.
دما	عندما يأتي هذا الفعل بمعنى [يمتلـك] لا يمكـن اسـتخدامه فـي المضـارع المسـتمر أمـا عنــ
	يأتي بمعنى [يأخذ أو يتناول] يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر .
✓ ¬	آلام الله الله الله الله Γhey have a wonderful car. ياخْذ
نی	عندما يأتي هذا الفعل بمعنى [ييدو] لا يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر أما عندما يع
••	إيشعر] يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر .
✓	How do you feel about your school? ييدو
✓	How are you feeling now?
	وزما بأت هذا الفوار وورا القوار المتقول المهن الستفواء المهن المستورا المستورا المستورا المستورا المستورا المتفوا
403	
<b>√</b> 1	يمكن استخدامه في المضارع المستمر . think she is clever.
	*
ν	'm thinking_of buying a new car. يفڪر

71





	Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:		
1	Nurses aft	er patients in hospitals.		_	
	(a) has looked		© looks	<b>d</b> look	
2		oon. It late.			
_	@ get	<b>b</b> is getting	© got	<b>d</b> gets	
3	The earth				
_	(a) is going	<b>b</b> went	© goes	<b>d</b> go	
4		t 7.30 in the morning.			
_	@ opning		© open	d is opening	
6	I I won't be				
4		<b>b</b> am promising		<b>d</b> promised	
6		is today because it		<b>a</b>	
		<b>b</b> rained		<b>d</b> rain	
7		n. He the childre			
		<b>b</b> is counting		<b>d</b> count	
8		to organizing everythin		<b>(1)</b>	
_		<b>b</b> does		<b>d</b> didn't	
9		Il in the streets. We play			
44	play never	<b>b</b> are never played	© never play	d doesn't play	
10		e in October, 12			
44	(a) will start	0	© starts	<b>d</b> would start	
QQ		oought for me fit	t me.		
44	@ doesn't	<b>6</b> don't	© isn't	d hasn't	
1/2		nere to live right now. I		ment.	
44		<b>b</b> look	© looking	(d) looked	
18	The sun us				
	@ give		© gave	<b>d</b> giving	
14	_	ny family next week.			
44	@ visited		© is visiting	d has visited	
<b>de</b>	I need to eat some	ething soon. Ihui	ngry.		
	@ got	<b>b</b> get	© are getting	d am getting	
	Fill in gap:			,	
10	Rice grow	v in cold climates.			
16	How often	. you go to the dentist?			
16	Bacteriah	nard to see by naked eye	е.		
	This knife is used.				
_		shopping with h	er mother.		
4		ake, then correct it:		,	
21		es. Things never stay th	e same	·	
		way two or three times		Γ	
	Toka doesn't drin		a your.	Γ	
		te. He's always getting	to work on time	[	
		is Canadian, but I'm not		[	
4	a in uninking wary	is variation, but i ili liot	Jui U.	F	





	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or o	d:					
_	Robert away two or three times a year.							
		<b>b</b> is usually going		d goes usually				
2	How now?	- Better than before.						
		<b>b</b> do you feel		d do you felt				
8	I used to read scien	nce fiction stories, but I	it now.					
	am used to read	<b>b</b> read	© never read	d am used to reading				
4		orts before I hor						
	@ will go	<b>b</b> had gone	© went	d go				
6		ewhere to live, I will ser						
		<b>b</b> had found		d found				
6		eir car any more. They						
	(a) tried	<b>b</b> try	© are trying	d tries				
4	I my bed w	hen I get up.						
		<b>b</b> always make	C have always mo	ade @ always makes				
Ö	Ahmed tak							
		<b>b</b> any longer		d any more				
e		ypt. It is usually hot and						
44	(a) is often	<b>b</b> has often	© doesn't often	d won't often				
UU	Calm down! I		•					
44	(a) listen	<b>b</b> listened	© am listening	(d) was listening				
UU		lel tomorrow, I will buy h		<b>A</b>				
44		<b>b</b> am going to visit		d will visit				
		n while I am at so						
96	(a) was tidled	<b>b</b> was being tidied	© is fidled	d tidied				
<b>UE</b>	Our rubbish			(A) in an illumition of				
90		<b>b</b> is collected		d is collecting				
		He doesn't do anything						
		<b>b</b> is always being	C always is	d is always				
Y	at isn't true what the	ey said. They	(a) is lying	<b>d</b> lies				
	© lie	<b>b</b> are lying	C is lying	<b>W</b> lies				
	Fill in gap:							
	The state of the s	o'clock every morning.		le				
		with you now because	I my nomev	vork.				
	anybody ne							
	•	ework to do every day.						
20	Never he c	ome to school late. He is	s so punctual.					
- 111	Find the mistal	ke, then correct it:	~	1				
21	Look! That man trie	es to open the door of yo	our car.	[]				
		e people? What do they		[]				
		enting something to eat.		[]				
24	"Hurry up! It's time	to leave." "OK, I come."		[]				
06	I must do now It de	ate late		1				





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or d	:				
		o much noise. I					
				d tries			
2	Oh! No! I've lost my	<b>ⓑ try</b> ohone again. l tł	nings.				
	always lose	<b>b</b> always loses	© always am losing	d am always losing			
3	Manage	ina un baniale					
	(a) thinking	<b>b</b> thinks	© is thinking	<b>d</b> think			
	She can't get used to	o for such a larg	ge company.				
	@ work	<b>ⓑ working</b> chool but heabs	© being work	<b>d</b> worked			
•							
	(a) is never	<b>b</b> never is	© is always	d usually is			
6		. reaches Egyptian farn					
4	@ don't	<b>b</b> no longer	© doesn't	d any longer			
V	He never thinks abo	out other people. He	very selfish.	<b>O</b> • • •			
		<b>b</b> is being					
ŏ		hy he so selfish					
•		<b>b</b> is being	© is been	d being is			
6	I nis room	Let's open a window.	@ amalla	(A) amount			
40	(a) is smelling	<b>b</b> smell e party?	<b>C</b> smells	<b>a</b> smerr			
W.	TII, Jana the	Party?	Are you enjoying	A vou are enjoying			
ଶଶ	Liston to those poor	<b>b Do you enjoy</b> ble. What language	Are you enjoying	w you are enjoying			
44	they speak	b they are speaking	Odo they speak	d are they speaking			
12	Excuse me,		e do mey speak	are mey speaking			
-		<b>b</b> are you speaking	© do you speak	d does you speak			
16	What's all that noise			© most /co speam			
-		<b>b</b> happens	© happening	d) is happening			
14		He a shower.					
	(a) having	(b) is having	© has	<b>d</b> had			
16	Scarcely to s	school late. He is so pur	nctual.				
	(a) he comes	<b>b</b> comes he	© does he come	d is he come			
	Fill in gap:						
16	Liars are people who	o the truth.					
	The water C						
	€ Water at 100 degrees Celsius.						
	I didn't use to the dark but now I it.						
		his means she	lazv				
44			iazy.				
00		e, then correct it:	foot	r 1			
	What goes on?	e world increases very	iast.	[]			
	•	very happy at the mome	ent	[			
	The cost of living rises. Every year things are more expensive. [						



# رُسن الضارع التسام The Present Perfect Tense

#### Formation ( )



#### (in Active)



(He / She / It فاعل مفرد / He / She (ا فاعل حمد / I / We / You / They فاعل حمد) ₩ has **№** have



- √ They have watched TV.
- ✓ He has sent me an e-mail this evening.
- √Jana has cooked the dinner.
- √ I have seen that play.

# **Formation**









- √ TV has been watched by them.
- √ This film has been watched by them.
- √ The dinner has been cooked by Jana.
- √ Some meals have been prepared.

#### Negative





(He / She / It فاعل مفرد / He / She (I / We / You / They فاعل حمر) الفاعل حمر) અ hasn't haven't



پتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في المضارع التام من:

√ They haven't watched TV.

√ Jana hasn't cooked the dinner.

#### Question



? ...... p.p الفاعل p.p .....?



√ Has Jana cooked the dinner?

Yes, she has.

No. she hasn't.

إ يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في المضارع التام من:



? ...... p.p الفاعل has / have أداة استفهام



- ✓ How long have you learned English? 

  ☐ I have learned English for ten years.
- √ Where have you been?

⇒ I have been to the club.

#### Key words



# 0 Just - already - ever - never





- ✓ She's never said sorry for what she did.
- ✓ Are you hungry?

- √ Has Jana ever travelled abroad?
- ✓ No student has ever come today.
- I've already booked my flight home.
- ⇒ No, I've just had lunch.
- 🗐 للحظ استخدام ever مع النفي والسؤال والتفضيل: ✓ Jana hasn't ever finished her homework.
- √ "Days" is the best novel I have ever read.







- الدظ استخدام never في جملة بها before أو للتعبير عن النفي:
- √ I have never seen a snake before.
- √ I have never seen such a beautiful girl.



- ✓ Mr Ahmed has lived here for ten years.
- ✓ Jana has travelled for the last week.
- √ I have lived here since my childhood.
- √ She has studied French since 2019.
- ✓ She has studied French since last year.



- ✓ I have played this game since I was five. It is a year since I met Ali.
- ✓ She has studied English since she started her school.
- √ It's (has been) a long time since I saw him.
- √ It is a year since meeting Ali.



- √ Toka hasn't registered for class yet.
- √ I haven't finished my breakfast lately.
- ✓ She has cooked the meal so far.
- √ I have studied French recently.
- √ Has she emailed you yet?
- √ They have lived here up till now.





- الدظ استخدام already في نهاية السؤال إذا كان المعنى يدل علي"دهشة / تعجب" أو الإجابة علي السؤال كانت الحالية أي أنه قام بالحدث:
  - √ Have you done your homework (yet already)? That's too fast.

# Ø How long - still - over (years - centuries).... - in the last.... It is the (first - second - third - last) time ......

- √ How long have you worked there?
- ✓ I've met many people in the last few days.
- ✓ Over the years, we have studied English.
- ✓ She still hasn't said sorry to me.
- √ It is the first time I have ever seen this film. (لاحظ استغدام ever مع هذا التركيب)

#### 6 today / this evening / this year ..../ this .......

- 🗐 يتم استخدامها في المضارع التام مع الفترات التي لم تنتهي أثناء وقت الكللم:
- ✓ I've drunk four cups of coffee today. ✓ Have you had a holiday this year?
- ✓ I haven't seen Tom this morning. ✓ Jana hasn't worked very hard this term.

#### Usage

#### الاستخداد

- يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن أحداثٌ بدأت في الماضي ومازال أثرها مستمرًا.
- √ Tom is looking for his key. He can't find it. He has lost his key.
  - يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن حدث انتهى في الماضي ولكن له نتيجة الأن.
- √ The road is closed. There's been an accident.
  - يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن أحداث تمت حديثاً.
- √ I've just finished my first year at university.
- √ I've already told him twice.

يستخدم المضارع التام للتعبير عن أحداث لم تحدث بعد.

- ✓ She's never played tennis.
- ⊙ يستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال عن خبرة شخص أو للتحدث عن خبرة سابقة.
- √ Have you ever been to London?
- $\checkmark$  I have already been to London.
  - يستخدم المضارع التام عند التحدث عن فترة من الوقت تستمر من الماضي حتى الآن.
- ✓ Susan really loves that film. She's seen it eight times!
- √ We've never had a car.

#### Wise Saying Never give

Never give up on a dream just because of the time it will take to accomplish it. The time will pass anyway

أبداً لا تتخلى عن حلمك فقط لأنه يتطلب وقتاً طويلاً لتحقيقه، فالوق**ت** سيمضى على أية حال

GIANTS



# Glants' Gramma

#### वर्षस्वीह बोर्की भी प्रिक्रीश पिव

٠ لاحظ الف ق بين:

#### have (has) gone / have (has) been

- √ I have been to Alex. = I visited Alex and came back. انفسته عدت
- لا المارية مناك المارحي. I have gone to Alex. = I visited Alex and I am still staying there. ذهنت بمازلت هناك المارحي 🗐 للحظ استخدام have been to إذا وحد أكثر من مكان أو الذهاب للمكان أكثر من مرة أو عدم الذهاب للمكان ولاحظ أن:
- √ been (to) = visited:
- / I've never been to China. Have you been there?

#### Try to understand

Dave: Have you travelled a lot. Jane? Jane: Yes, I've been to lots of places.

Dave: Really? Have you ever been to China?

Jane: Yes, I've been to China twice.

Dave: What about India?

Jane: No, I haven't been to India.

#### have (has) been in = have (has) gone to

√ I have been in Luxor. I will come next week.

= I have gone to Luxor. I will come next week.

الحظ الفرق بين.

#### How long - How long ago

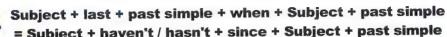
- ✓ (How long How long ago) did you study English?
  - √ (How long How long ago) have you been studying English?

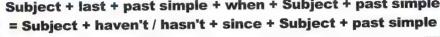
ويليه جملة في المستقبل / before / as soon as.. after / when ويليه جملة في المستقبل

After I have finished my studies, I will travel abroad.

began / started + to + inf. نعول المضارع التام ي since / for بدلاً من ago بدلاً من

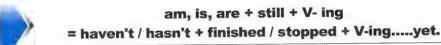
- It has rained for two hours.
  - = It began to rain two hours ago.
- She has played football for 6 months.
  - = She started to play football 6 months ago.







- = I haven't seen my uncle since I was on his farm.
- I last took an aspirin 3 days ago. = I haven't taken an aspirin for 3 days.



✓ He is still doing his homework.

= He hasn't finished doing his homework yet.





#### الضارع التام الستمر The Present perfect continuous

#### Formation (in Active)





(He / She / It / فاعل مفرد)

ພ has been have been على حمد) / I / We / You / They) ماعل حمد)



- √ They have been watching TV all night.
- ✓ Jana has been cooking lunch for 3 hours.
- ✓ It has been raining for two hours.
- ✓ Where have you been? I've been looking for you everywhere.

#### **Formation**



(in Passive)



Object + (has / have) + been + P.P





✓ TV has been watched by them.

√ The dinner has been cooked by Jana.

#### Negative A





(He / She / It / فاعل مفرد) ا الأعل حمر) / I / We / You / They) ما haven't been

hasn't been





✓ Ali hasn't been feeling well recently.

#### Question



🗐 يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في المضارع التام المستمر من:



? ...... been + V + ing الفاعل been + V + ing



- Yes, I have.

- No. I haven't.

🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في المضارع التام المستمر من:



? ...... been + V + ing الفاعل has / have اداة استفهام



✓ I've been looking for you everywhere.

√ Why are you clothes so dirty? What have you been doing?

# Key words Alunchia

🗐 بعض كلمات الوضارع التام وأكثر استخدامنا لهذا الزمن بكون مع [all, for, since]:

since	منذ	He has been travelling since 2010.
for	لدة	She has been studying for five hours now.
all	طوال	He has been working all day.
How long	كم طول المدة	How long have you been waiting for me?
lately	مؤخرأ	I haven't been eating much lunch lately.

#### **Usage**



🗐 بستخدم للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي ومازال مستمراً في المضارع ويمكن استمراره في المستقبل

- ✓ He has been living here for three years now.
- √ Toka has been studying all day.
- ✓ I have been working as a teacher since 2010.







- 🗐 يستخدم مع اللحداث التي تتكرر خلال فترة زمنية
- ✓ Mai is a very good tennis player. She's been playing since she was eight.
- ✓ Every morning they meet in this café. They've been going there for years.

#### الفرق بين المضارع التام البسيط والمضارع التام المستمر

- إلى يستخدم المضارع التام البسيط للتعبير عن حدث بدأ في الماضي وانتهي و لكن له أثر أما المضارع التــام المســتمر يعبر عن حدث بدأ في الماضي و مازال مستمراً في الحاضر مع إحتمالية استمراره في المستقبل وهناك حالات لا نستخدم فيها المضارع التام المستمر ونستخدم بدلاً منها المضارع التام:
  - ◘ هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموماً و هي أفعال الشعور و الحواس و الملكية و المعرفة.
- ► ✓ We are good friends. We have known each other for 10 years.
  - 🕥 إذا ذكرنا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل لا يستخدم المضارع التام المستمر بل نستخدم المضارع التام (لأن الحدث علي فترات متقاطعة).
- ✓ Ahmed has finished typing three reports. (has been finishing 🌂)
  ✓ She has drunk five cups of tea. (has been drinking 🛠)
- [ \sqrt{ | (have stopped have been stopping) writing stories for 3 years now.

# الأفعال التي لا تستغرق فترة طويلة (لحظية) لا تأتي في الاستمرارية مثل المحمد عليه المحمد المح

#### (break down / stop / close / open / end / finish....)

- ✓ She is late for the meeting. Her car has broken down.
- ► ✓ I have known / had / heard etc. is the present perfect simple.
  - ✓ I have been learning / been waiting / been doing etc.is the present perfect continuous
  - الستخدم المضارع التام للسؤال بـ (How much, How many or How many times) و المضارع التام المستمر (bow long) و المضارع التام المستمر السؤال بـ (how long) مع الاشباء التي مازلت تحدث:
- - ✓ How much of that book have you read?
  - ✓ They've played tennis three times this week.
  - ✓ I'm learning Arabic, but I haven't learnt very much yet.

#### Compare these examples

- ✓ My hands are very dirty. I've been repairing my bike.
- ✓ Joe has been eating too much recently. He should eat less.
- √ It's nice to see you again. What have you been doing since we last met?
- √ Where have you been? Have you been playing tennis?
- √ My bike is OK again now. I've repaired it.
- √ Somebody has eaten all the chocolates. The box is empty.
- ✓ Where's the book I gave you? What have you done with it?
- √ Have you ever played tennis?

#### الفرق بين المضارع المستمر و المضارع التام المستمر

#### I am doing (present continuous)

- ▶ Don't disturb me now. I'm working.
- We need an umbrella. It's raining.
- ▶ Hurry up! We're waiting.

#### I have been doing (present perfect continuous)

- ▶ I've been working hard. Now I'm going to have a break.
- ▶ The ground is wet. It's been raining.
- ▶ We've been waiting for an hour.





L.

1	Choose the correc	t answer from a h co				
1		Lanswer Hom a, b, C o	r a:			
	That's the first time	I you get ang	ry.			
	@ saw		© have been seeing	d have seen		
2	Yara her key	y. She can't get into th	e house.			
_ (	@ lost	<b>b</b> has lost		<b>d</b> losing		
3	have these	students studied Frer	nch?	3		
	For then	<b>b</b> For when	© Since when	d How long ago		
4	Once I this	novel, I'll give it to my	old friend.			
(	have read	<b>b</b> has read	© had read	d was reading		
	It's ages since I					
	(a) had seen		© have seen	<b>d</b> see		
		e your work?				
	(a) yet		Calready	<b>d</b> never		
		to this place.				
	<b>0</b> l am		© I've been	<b>d</b> I went		
	Have you ever					
	<b>o</b> gone		© stayed	<b>d</b> visited		
	We've never					
40	<b>©</b> gone	(b) going	©been	<b>d</b> go		
44	one can't go to the p	party because she	a cold.			
44	a) caught	<b>b</b> has caught	© have caught	d had caught		
	How long m					
46	t's exectly fear year	<b>b</b> have you been	© have you gone	d have you		
441	os exactly four year osince	rs I last played				
		<b>b</b> when	© for	(d) ago		
		en. That's why she isn				
		<b>b</b> has lost airo, I haven't seen my	friend Ali	d was being lost		
	a) were	was	© have been	d had been		
	_	you as he his	mobile	w nad been		
(	a) lost	b has lost	Chad lost	<b>d</b> losing		
-	Fill in gap:	——————————————————————————————————————	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·	losing		
A COLUMN TO A	A A CONTRACTOR OF THE REAL PROPERTY CONTRACTOR CONTRACT		TO THE THE THE PROPERTY OF THE			
	n't seen To					
	haven't seen Tom					
	They haven't had a holiday ten years.					
de v	Mai is writing emails. She's writing emails all morning.					
207	They've been playing	g tennis 2 o'cl	ock.			
	Find the mistake, t	hen correct it:				
		ne has gone to the ma	rket.			
22 F	or the last meeting.	, we haven't seen eac	h other again.	[		
28 8	Sally has been work	ing here since six moi	nths.	[		
24 1	'm hungry. I haven't	eaten anything for br	eakfast.			
441	Where have you been? Have you been played tennis?					





6	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:				
1	I have written storie	s as long as I	can remember.				
	@ for	<b>b</b> since	<b>©</b> while	<b>d</b> after			
2	I last met Ali when w	e were at your party.	Since then, I	him.			
	a haven't met	<b>b</b> hadn't met	©didn't meet	d wasn't meeting			
3	Prices sharp	ply over the past thre					
	@ rose	<b>b</b> have risen	© had risen	<b>d</b> rise			
4	James is on holiday.	. He to Italy.					
	@ is gone	<b>b</b> has gone	© has been	d have gone			
5	<b>Everything is going</b>	well. We any	problems so far.	<b>O</b>			
	@ didn't have	<b>b</b> don't have	©haven't had	d hasn't had			
6			e second time this				
	(a) has happened	<b>b</b> happens	Chappened	d is happening			
7	You're out of breath	running?		0 -			
	Are you	<b>b</b> Have you	© Have you been	d Do you			
8	Sally has been work						
	@ for six months	<b>b</b> since six months	©six months ago	d in six months			
9	It raining fo	r a while, but now it's	raining again.				
	<b>a</b> stopped	<b>b</b> has stopped	©was stopped	d has been stopping			
1	I enjoyed the film as	I saw many places I'v	ve never				
	@ gone	<b>b</b> been to	© been	<b>d</b> arrived			
0	Ia vegetaria	an; I've never eaten n	neat.				
	(a) had always been	<b>b</b> have always been	©was never been	d was always being			
1	Ahmed has just sen	t me an email. He	to me since last	month.			
		<b>b</b> didn't write		dhasn't been writing			
1	We our rela	tives for a year. They	are too busy.	(C) 1 11			
_		<b>b</b> haven't been met		d haven't met			
1	She hard fo	r about eight hours n	ow.	O Harris			
4	a has been working	<b>b</b> is working	© works	d will work			
U	Egypt much			(A) has abanasad			
	(a) changed	<b>b</b> had changed	© is changing	d has changed			
	> Fill in gap:		uks sun kinnikaskiskiskiskiskiskiskiskiskiskiskiskiskis	· ·			
0	It's been raining	lunchtime.					
	It a long tim						
		g hard the la	st Olympic games.				
		ave you drunk all the j					
		him Christma					
4		THE RESIDENCE OF THE PARTY OF T					
Г	Find the mistake,		grand of the common model of transmise and which and philosophic departments of the common and d	** * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *			
		reading that novel ye					
		doing this work since		[			
		s village at the age of	seven.	[			
	How much of that b		m 11 1 11 1	[			
(2	L haven't met the minister already. It's the first time to meet him.						



# 3 A dvanced E xercises Mark

				The state of the s
	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
	Our block of flats		the back and the standing region of the standing of the standi	PROVINGIAL AND TO THE PROVINCE AND THE P
			© has built	d have been built
2	After he scl	nool, he will be spend	ing six months in Indi	a.
	(a) leaving	<b>b</b> has left	© had left	d) left
3		play tennis since she		O
	@ isn't	<b>b</b> wasn't	© hasn't been	d hasn't gone
4	I such a tric	ky person all my life lo	ong.	
_		<b>b</b> have never seen		d not seen
5			lex desert road recen	
_			© has been taken	d had taken
6	Toka very h			
		<b>b</b> hadn't worked		d don't work
V	Wagah is very tired.	He has very	hard all day.	
6		<b>b</b> working		<b>d</b> worked
8		ennis three times		
		<b>b</b> next week	© a week	d this week
e	Since her, I			
40	© seen	(b) saw	©seeing	(d) see
UU	There any n	lews about Sara since	she moved to Beni S	iuet.
99	d wasn't	(b) werent	© haven't been	d nasnt been
<b>uu</b>	It's two years		Osinso I didultasa	(A) since I lest seve
10	u mai i don'i see	oo this marning Wh	© since I didn't see	a since i last saw
Q.C	have called	nes this morning. Whe	c had called	Auga calling
16	he worked	es a football trainer b	e has earned a lot of	d was calling
44	M while	<b>b</b> Having	Since	(d) After
14	I haven't seen Seif	the last time w	ve met at the cinema.	
		<b>b</b> when		d) since
16		on the shore this		G Siniec
			© had been seen	d have been seen
	Fill in gap:			anna capacità princi a pro cana
-	a monotone care assessment as a second of the contract of the	s. She's sent lots of e	mails week	entre detrouer de entre roue
	They've mai		mans week.	
	It's two years since		47.0	
		been driving?" "Sinc	e I 17."	
	She's been waiting.	The state of the s	instantialistical and the second seco	A. S. 100
	Find the mistake, t	make a second of the second of		1
21	They haven't had a h	noliday since ten year	rs.	
22	I've been knowing a	bout the problem for	a long time.	[]
25	It was ages since we	e went to the cinema.		[]
24	They are married for	or 20 years.		[]
45	How long have you l	peen having that cam	era?	ſ]



# Advanced Exercises Mark 25

	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	rd:	1		
1	The museum	. by thousands of peo	ple this year.			
	a has visited	<b>b</b> has been visited	© visited	d visit		
2	That's the best pres	entation		•		
			© I used to hear	d I've ever heard		
3			we met in Alexandria			
	(a) while	<b>b</b> when	© for	<b>d</b> since		
4	It is the most excitin	g journey I have	been to. I have not	had such a journey.		
	ago '	<b>b</b> never	© ever	d yet		
6	Ahmed is the best d	river I up till n	ow.			
	a have ever seen	<b>b</b> had ever seen	© have never seen	d had never seen		
6	Oh, I the bus	. How can I go to the	university now?			
	(a) had missed	<b>b</b> has missed	© have missed	<b>d</b> missed		
7	Since her childhood	, Rawan in he	r hometown.			
		<b>b</b> has lived		<b>d</b> lived		
8	He hasin Lond	on for three years no	w. He is doing post gr	aduate studies there.		
	@ gone		© been	<b>d</b> done		
9	Ali and his family ha	ve travelled since	*****			
			© he gets married	<b>d</b> married		
10		don. This means that I				
	(a) is still	<b>b</b> won't be	© is no longer	d was		
90		I will wait for him unti				
44	(a) has been	<b>b</b> has gone	© goes	d had gone		
12	Now Huda lives in e	xtreme poverty becau	ise all the money she	had,		
44			© has been lost			
	I travelled to Europe	e in 2016, since then,	I there again.	<b>A</b> 11.1		
44		<b>b</b> wasn't	© weren't	d haven't been		
14	I five clients	today.		A		
40	(a) have met	b have been met	© was met	(d) meer		
US.	I only bought my ne	w car last week, but I	5000km. with	it so iar.		
		b nave aiready drive	en © had already drive	en Warove		
	Fill in gap:		,			
16	A: Where is your fat	her, Amin? B: He has,	to the superm	arket.		
17	Manal hasn't phone	d us the sumn	ner holiday.			
18	My father has	to America on busi	ness and he is still the	re.		
		has there sine				
		nWho them				
		********				
	Find the mistake,					
			his injury in the final.			
-	•	ysics since the last w		[]		
-		I've never eaten shri	πps.	[]		
	I have passed this to		wielt	[]		
46	<b>4</b> He has lived in his hometown for the last visit.					



### Hants' Grammar



#### زمن الماضي البسيم The Past Simple Tense

# Formation (in Active)



التصريف الثاني للفعل بإضافة ( d - ed - jed ) أو حفظ الأفعال الغير منتظمة.



- ✓ Ava went to the cinema.
- ✓ The police stopped me on my way home last night.
- √ We saw Toka in town a few days ago.

#### Formation ( )







Object + (was / were) + P.P



√ The film was watched at home by Jana.

#### Negative \_\_\_\_\_





التصريف الثاني + never - التصريف الثاني + didn't



- √ They didn't invite us to the party, so we didn't go.
- ✓ I never got up late when I was young.

#### Question



🖺 يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في الماضي البسيط من

ستكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في الماضي البسيط من:



? ...... ? الفاعل Did



- ✓ Did you play football yesterday?
- Yes, I did.

- No. I didn't.

✓ Did you go out last night?

Yes, I went to the cinema, but I didn't enjoy the film much.



? ...... : inf الفاعل did + اداة استفهام



- √ What did you do at the weekend?
- ⇒ I didn't do anything.
- √ When did Mr Thomas die?

⇒ About ten years ago.

# Key words and and

وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن الماضي السسط مثل ولاحظ أنهم باتوا أول الحملة و أخرها

4		
أمس	Þ	I sent an e-mail to my friend yesterday.
منذ	Þ	This house was built three years ago.
السابق	Þ	Seif wrote his first novel last year.
في (سنة سابقة)	Þ	Ahmed was born in 1986.
في الماضي	Þ	In the past, the wind was used to sail ships.
مرة	Þ	Once, I had a terrible accident.
متى	Þ	How long ago did you start studying English?
في عصور قديم	Þ	These pyramids were built in ancient time.
منذ بضعة ايام	Þ	I met Farouk in Beni Suief the other day.
	منذ السابق في (سنة سابقة) في الماضي مرة متى متى في عصور قديم	<ul> <li>منذ</li> <li>السابق</li> <li>في (سنة سابقة)</li> <li>في الماضي</li> <li>مرة</li> <li>متى</li> <li>في عصور قديم</li> </ul>



يستخدم زمن الماضي البسيط مع بعض التعبيرات الأتية ويعبر عن ماضي غير حقيقي.

آ) l wish + فاعل + ماضي بسيط + فاعل	▶ I wish Toka studied well.
2) It's (high) time + ناعل + ماضي بسيط + ناعل	▶ It's time she studied English.
3) I would rather + فاعل + ماضي بسيط	▶ I would rather she studied well.
4) suppose / imagine + فاعل	► Suppose you inherited five million dollars,
	what would you do?

#### Usage



- يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن حدث بدأ و انتهى في الماضي
- ☐ ✓ He visited his uncle yesterday. He had his lunch and went out.
- ✓ Aya passed her exam because she studied very hard.
  - يستخدم الماضي البسيط لوصف أحداث تتبع بعضها (سرد احداث قصة/ رواية / موقف /.....)
- ► ✓ He did his homework then slept.
  - - ✓ Once, Aya found a wallet, then she went to the police.
      (suppose / imagine) للتعبير عن النصيحة و الوضع الافتراضي المسيط في الحالة الثانية (f) للتعبير عن النصيحة و الوضع الافتراضي
- If she studied hard, he would succeed.
  - ✓ If I trained hard, I would win the race.
    - 🗗 يستخدم الماضي البسيط مع الروابط الزمنية مثل (..after/ as soon as/ before) بشرط أن يكون الزمن الآخر ماضي
- ✓ After he had studied, he slept.
- ✓ Mai had had dinner before she watched TV.
  - ✓ Mona didn't come until Toka had invited her.
- ✓ No sooner had I finished studying, than I watched TV.
  - يستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن عادات و أفعال متكررة في الماضي مع اظرف التكرار.

#### always / usually / sometimes / every.....

- ✓ When I was young, I usually played with my friends every day.
- I always did my homework at night but I no longer do.
- He drove into town every day last week
  - ✓ He always got up late last year.
- المستخدم الماضي البسيط للتعبير عن في عادة في الماضي مع



used to+inf. (تعبر عن عادة كانت تعدث في الماضي ولم تعد تعدث الآن) didn't use to+inf. = never used to+ inf. النفي C لم يعتاد أن did use to + inf. .....



- √ When I was young, I didn't use to get up late.
- ✓ Did you use to get up early?
  - جملة التعقيب بعد **but now** تكون مضارع وعكس الجملة الأساسية ويستخدم **do does** إذا كان فعل الجملة السابعد عدد **om is are** إذا كان V. be الجملة ليس
- √ I used to sleep late, but now I don't.
- √ She used to get up early, but now she doesn't.
- √ She used to be active, but now she isn't.
- √ They used to be lazy, but now they aren't.



🗐 للحظ الفرق سن: am - is - are – get(s) used to (V+ing)(n) يعتاد على (تعبر عن عادة تعدث في الحاضر) ✓ She is used to getting up early. √ I'm used to playing football. 🗐 للحظ أن am - is - are) بناتي يوعني (يستخدم لــــ) ويليها finf. للحظ أن √ Cotton is used to make clothes. √ The wind is used to sail ships. 🗐 للحظ أن: .any more. مضارع بسيط منفي + الفاعل = | مضارع بسيط no longer + الفاعل = .any more. ✓ He used to smoke = He no longer smokes. = He doesn't smoke any more (longer). 🗐 للحظ شكل 📞 في الماضي البسيط: The past of be (am / is / are)  $\Im$  was / were ✓ I was anary because they were late. √ Was the weather good when you were on holiday? ✓ They weren't able to come because they were so busy. ✓ Did you go out last night or were you too tired? زمن الماضي المستمر The Past Continuous Tense Formation in Active + was / were + (V +ing) ✓ This time last year I was living in Brazil. ✓ They were watching TV yesterday evening. ✓ Jana was cooking dinner all day yesterday. Formation ( ) (in Passive) Object + (was / were) + being + P.P ✓ TV was being watched vesterday evening. ✓ Dinner was being prepared by Jana. Negative .... wasn't / weren't + (V +ing) √ They weren't watching TV yesterday evening. ✓ Jana wasn't preparing dinner. Question III 🗐 يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في الماضي المستمر من: Was / Were الفاعل (V +ing) ......? √ Was Jana cooking dinner? - No. she wasn't - Yes, she was

🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في الماضي المستمر من:

? ...... (V +ing) الفاعل was / were اداة استفهام



I was doing my homework. ✓ What were you doing at 10 o'clock last night?

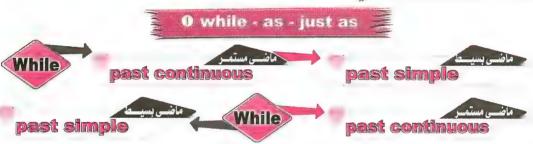


### Alanis' Arammer

### Key words



وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن الماضي المستمر



🧃 نستخدم بعد while ماضي مستمر والجملة الثانية ماضي بسيط:

- حدث قطع آخر While I was watching TV, the light went out.
- ✓ The light went out while I was watching TV.
- ✓ As I was watching TV, my father came. ✓ Just as she was cooking, she fainted.



🗐 يمكن أن يكون الحدثين مع while في الماضي المستمر:

✓ While Jana was watching TV, Toka was studying English. حدثان مستمران



🧻 يمكن استخدام الماضي البسيط بعد while إذا كان الفعل الأساسي verb to be:

√ While I was at street, I fell off my bike.



🧃 إذا لم يأتي بعد while فاعل يأتي بعدها (V+ing) بشرط ان يكون فاعل الجملتين واحداً:

✓ While playing, I fell down.



- √ When the phone rang, he was leaving his office.
- ✓ He was leaving his office when the phone rang.
- ✓ It was raining when I got up.



🗐 یمکن استخدام On بدلاً من when ویأتی بعدها 🐧

- ✓ On arriving, he found the light on.
- ✓ On seeing the accident, I called the police.

on (seeing - hearing - reaching)



### Aismis' Arsmmar











🗐 یمکن استخدام during بدلاً من while و یأتی بعدها

- ✓ During the party, I received many presents.
- ✓ During the game, he got hurt.

#### - كلمة تدل على الماضي و قبلها أو بعدها فترة زمنية 🧿

- ✓ Jana was studying at seven yesterday.
- ✓ They were studying English at 7 o'clock last Sunday.

#### Usage



- يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في وقت معين في الماضي.
- ✓ He was playing all morning yesterday.
  - يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدث كان مستمرا في الماضي عندما وقع حدث آخر.
- ✓ Matt phoned while we were having dinner.
- √ I hurt my back while I was working in the garden.
- √ I was walking along the road when I saw Ali. So I stopped, and we had a chat.
  - 😙 يستخدم الماضي المستمر للتعبير عن حدثين كانا مستمرين في نفس الوقت في الماضي.
- ✓ While she was preparing dinner, he was watching TV.

# Important Notes

• لاحظ الفرق بين الماضي المستمر و الماضي التام المستمر:

- ✓ I was doing my homework all day yesterday.
- ✓ I had been doing my homework all day yesterday before I slept.
  - 🕜 لاحظ استخدام because في الماضي المستمر:
- ✓ I couldn't answer the phone because I was having a shower.
- ✓ He couldn't reply to his friends because he was praying.
  - 🕜 هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة المستمرة عموماً و هي أفعال الشعور و الحواس و اللكية و المعرفة.
- ✓ We were good friends. We knew each other well. (NOT were knowing)
- √ I was enjoying the party, but Mai wanted to go home. (NOT was wanting)

#### الفرق بين الماضي البسيط و الماضي المستمر

#### Compare the past continuous (I was doing) and past simple (I did):

Past continuous (in the middle of an action)

- ✓ I was walking home when I met Dan. (in the middle of walking home)
- ✓ Toka was watching TV when we arrived.

#### Past simple (complete action)

- ✓ I walked home after the party last night. (= all the way, completely)
- √ Toka watched TV a lot when she was ill last year.
  Compare:
- ✓ When Jana arrived, we were having dinner.
   (= we had already started before she arrived)
- √ When Jana arrived, we had dinner. (= Jana arrived, and then we had dinner)









diam'r.	Choose the correct an	swer from a, b, c or	r d:	
1	During the previous co	nference, he	a speech.	100000 × 100
	@ gives <b>(b)</b>			d had given
2	When Nader was in Sha			
	(a) sunbathed (b)	was sunbathing		d would sunbathe
3	My purse last w	reek.		
	(a) stole (b)		© was stolen	d steal
4	While studying, he	asleep.		
_	(a) fall (b)			d felt
6	Maged's grandmother.			
	(a) seemed (b)			d had seemed
6	About ten million touris			
	(a) are visiting (b)	visited	© will visit	d have visited
7	I lunch at home  (a) haven't (b)	yesterday.		
4	(a) haven't	hasn't	© didn't have	d hadn't
8	He playing foot			
4	(a) use to (b)			
9	When he was young, he			
44	(a) took (b)			d was taken
UU	The TV sound was too I	high. Of course Am	nal it.	0
44	(a) watched (b)			<b>d</b> was watching
UU	While she was cooking	, her sister	. homework.	
44	(a) was doing (b)	did	© does	d had done
UZ	Unfortunately, I	two mistakes in n	ny English Exam yeste	erday.
46	a have made b		© did	<b>d</b> made
<b>U</b> E	How long did y			
66	(a) for (b)		© since	d ever
U4	I waved to Aya, but she		O b and all be alread	(A) looked
46	(a) wasn't looking (b)	was looking	c naant lookea	Ф тоокеа
UE	a car when you			@ Did house
inea.	Had you	were you naving	C Have you nad	d Did you nave
	Fill in gap:	***************************************	director and a second adoption are a problem or consideration and the second	
16	2002, my elder	brother finished s	tudying at university.	
17	What time it wh	en your father arri	ved?	
18	I used to play in the stre	eet when I was you	ing but now I	
	Soha started school tw			
	Have you seen Ola? - Y		hour ago	
H. Carlins			i nour ago.	
	Find the mistake, the			
	I was watching TV whil		_	[
	Did you go out last nigh			[
	Have you ever been to			
	I saw you in the park ye			
25	We were good friends	. We were knowing	g each other well.	[

90







Charles .	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	What when you were in the garde	en?	
	(a) you were doing (b) were you doing		d have you done
2	I had to take a taxi because my car		
	(a) mending (b) was mending		
3	the film, Mahmoud fell asleep bed		
4	While	© On	<b>d</b> During
4	Mazen chess all day yesterday.		(A) band relationed
G	(a) played (b) was playing		d had played
9	When the phone rang, I my lunch.		a will have
6	(a) had (b) am having While the party, we were busy set	nding invitations to ou	r friends
•	(a) was prepared (b) was been prepare		
9	As I home last night, it started rain		ica (a) is propured
	(a) has walked (b) had walked		d) walked
8	While Basant was studying her lesson, he		
	(a) was watching (b) watches		
9	From 7 to 9 yesterday, I a certain		
	(a) did (b) had done		
10	Where?		
	(a) was written the book	<b>b</b> was the book writted the book was writing	ten
		d the book was writi	ing
Q(	The thief and sent to prison.		
44	(a) was arrested (b) arrested		
16	Before joining the university, I liv	ing away from my fam	nily.
46	(a) used (b) didn't use to	© used to	d wasn't used to
€.	My grandparents farmers for 40	years.	(A) have
40	(a) were (b) had been		d has
UG	What games did you play when you		d use to
60	(a) used to (b) was used When he was in Cairo, he always		d ose to
We	(a) walked (b) was walking	© walks	d 'II walk
(***			
96	Fill in gap:	5 - 1 2 M - 1 1	
	the party, I met an old friend.	l bacama ao thin	
	While I ill, I lost a lot of weight and Once, We lunch in this restauran		
-	Really, they visited the zoo five years		
	your office cleaned yesterday?	••••••	
	Find the mistake, then correct it:	designe (innovance sides ) of a sh	S (
66		"O:"	
	On the flight, I was reading a book called		[]
	I helped my mother while she was cooking	_	[
	While he was playing football, he fall and I'd rather they come to the party early.	ule bloke ilis leg.	[
	It was cold, so he shuts the window.		[



# Advanced Exercises Mark

	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:				
	They didn't answer the ringing phone since they deeply.						
	(a) sleep	(b) were sleeping	© are sleeping	(d) has slept			
2	I to preparin	g my meals when I st	arted to live away from	m my family.			
	(a) used	(b) got used	© get used	d become used			
3	He doesn't stay up I	ate any longer. This n	neans he	<b>O</b> ************************************			
	a used to stay up la	te	(b) didn't use to stay u	up late			
	© usually stays up lo	ite	(d) is in the habit of s	taying up late			
4	My brother1	he money he needed		, , ,			
	@ gave	<b>b</b> didn't give	© give	d was given			
•	While my car	. at the garage, I was	having a meal at a ne	earby restaurant.			
_	(a) was repairing	<b>b</b> was being repaire	d © had repaired	<b>d</b> repaired			
6	I no longer work in S	Saudi Arabia. I	there for ten years.				
_	(a) had worked	<b>b</b> work	© have worked	<b>d</b> worked			
7	Rawan used to be la	azy, but now she					
_	@ does no longer	<b>b</b> is no longer	© no longer does	d no longer is			
8	Amr for eigh	nt hours every day las	t week.				
4	a had worked	<b>b</b> worked	© has worked	<b>d</b> works			
	He fat but no						
44	<b>a</b> used to be	<b>b</b> didn't use to be	© is used to being	d isn't used to being			
	"I used to smoke " n						
44	(a) I started	<b>b</b> I no longer do it	© I smoke	d I'll stop it			
	It is time they	home from school. I	wonder what has del	layed them.			
	@ go	<b>b</b> have gone	© went	d are going			
UZ	Even the only thing	that I I now ha	ate.				
44	a used to love	<b>b</b> love	© am used to loving	d was loved			
	Ahmed to so						
90	(d) went	(b) has gone	© has been	d has left			
U	visiting hou	rs, we got an entranc	e ticket for the hospit	al to see my uncle.			
46	During	(b) On	© After	<b>@</b> While			
UE	During to so	chool, I saw some stud	dents quarrelling fierd	cely.			
		walks	© my walk	a was walking			
	Fill in gap:						
		, he received a call fro					
17	the race, sh	e fell fainted and lost	her national record.				
		s while in Lux					
		hool, suddenly an ear					
	I'd rather you						
E/11/2004		Applicable measurement in the terresconding control of the control	*****************				
	Find the mistake,						
20	While I was being in	Banha, I met an old fi	riend of mine.	[]			
				d time as well.[]			
		friends when his stay		[]			
		n't hear the doorbell.		[]			
25	She gave an award for her bravery during the fire.						



#### زمن الماضي التام The Past Perfect Tense

# Formation (in Active) had + P.P



- Aya didn't want to go to the cinema because she'd already seen the movie.
  - ✓ I thought I'd done the right thing, but I realised that I'd made a big mistake.

#### Formation ( )

#### (in Passive)

#### Object + had + been + P.P



- - ✓ Dinner had been prepared by Jana when I came back.

# **Negative**

#### hadn't (had never) + P.P



- ► ✓ The house was dirty. They hadn't cleaned it for weeks.
- ► ✓ The man on the plane was very nervous because he'd never flown before.

#### E Question







- ✓ Had Jana prepared dinner when you reached home?
  - Yes, she had.

- X No. she hadn't.

🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في الماضي التام من:



? ...... P.P + الفاعل had + اداة استفهام



√ What had you done before I came? ✓ I had called my relatives before you came.

**Key words** 



وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن الماضي التام:

O after (before that) - as soon as - when - because (as - since)





- ✓ After he had read the novel, he watched TV.
- ✓ After reading the novel, he watched TV.
- ✓ As soon as he had eaten his meal, he drank tea.
- ✓ I slept before that I had studied English.
- ✓ I didn't swim because I had forgotten my suit.
- ✓ She didn't buy anything as (since) the shop had been closed.
- ✓ When I had arrived at the station, the train left.

عدم وجود رابط Having + P.P Having read the novel, he watched TV.



# GIANTS

# Giants' Grammar

#### 0 before (after that) - by the time - when



- ✓ Before he watched TV, he had read the novel.
- ✓ Before watching TV, he had read the novel.
- √ I had studied English after that I slept.
- √ By the time I arrived, the thief had escaped.
- √ When we arrived at the cinema, the film had already started.

# 

- √ He didn't park his car until he had found a place.
- ✓ She never watched TV till she had finished all work.

#### عام سابق + already / just / never / yet / ...before. / by

- √ When we arrived, the film had already started.
- ✓ She had just got home when I phoned her.
- √ By 2018, I had finished all my studies.
- ✓ He told me he had already done his homework.
- √ They had never come late before.













- √ They had no sooner finished painting our new house than we moved into it.
- ✓ No sooner had they finished painting our new house than we moved into it.
- ✓ They had hardly finished painting our new house when we moved into it.
- ✓ Scarcely had they finished painting our new house when we moved into it.



- √ It was only when I had done my homework that I went to bed.
- ✓ It was not until I had done my homework that I went to bed.





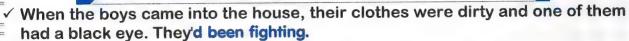
### Usage Yurin

- ◘ بستخدم الماضي التام في ترتيب الأحداث فيكون الحدث الأول ماضي تام و الثاني ماضي بسيط
- √ I travelled but before that I had locked my flat.
- √ Before I came, I had called her. ✓ After she had cooked, she set the table.
  - 🕜 يستخدم الماضي التام للتعبير عن حدث تم قبل وقت معين في الماضي
- ✓ Before Jana had lunch, she had set the table.
- √ I had done my work by the time I went out.
  - 🗗 يستخدم الماضي التام إذا أردنا التحدث عن الأشياء التي حدثت قبل هذا الوقت
- √ When Sarah arrived at the party, Paul had already gone home.

#### زمن الماضي الثناء المستمر The Past Perfect Continuous Tense

# Formation (in Active)

#### had been + V + ing



I was very tired when I got home. I'd been working hard all day.

#### Formation ....



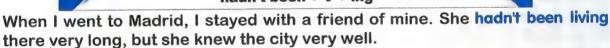
#### Object + had + been + P.P

✓ Dinner had been prepared by Jana when I came back.

#### Negative



#### hadn't been + V + ing



#### Question (I)



🗐 يتكون السؤال بمعنى هل في الماضي التام المستمر من



?......? been + V + ing الفاعل Had



Had Jana been watching TV all night?

- Yes, she had.

- No. she hadn't.

🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام في الماضي التام المستمر من:



?...... been + V + ing + الفاعل had + اداة استفهام

√ What had you been doing all night? ✓ I had been revising all my lessons all night.

### Key words

[all, for, since] بعض كلمات الماضي التام و أكثر استخدامنا لهذا الزمن يكون مع

since			He was always busy. He had been travelling since 2010.
for   When I met him I knew that he had been waiting for more t an hour.			
How long	كم طول المدة	Þ	How long had you been waiting before Ali came?
all فوال ا اله I was very tired when I arrived home. I'd been working h			





Usage

- يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر للتعبير عن استمرار فعل حتى وقت معين في ماضي
- ✓ When I got there, they had already been playing for about an hour.
- ✓ She had been sleeping soundly for many hours before her husband arrived.
  - 🕥 يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر للتعبير عن شيء يحدث في فترة زمنية قبل حدوث شيء اخر
- ✓ We'd been playing tennis for about half an hour when it started to rain heavily.
- ✓ Ali went to the doctor last Friday. He hadn't been feeling well for some time.

#### الفرق بين الماض الثام اليسيط والماض الثام المستمر

﴾ يستخدو الواضي التام النسط للتعبير عن ترتيب احداث في الماضي أما الماضي التام المستمر يُعبر عـن اسـتمرار حـدث في الماضي لفترة معينة

#### وهناك حالات لا نستخدم فيها الماضي التام المستمر ونستخدم بدلاً منها الماضي التام:

- هناك أفعال لا تستخدم في الأزمنة الستمرة عموماً وهي أفعال الشعور و الحواس و الملكية و العرفة.
- √ We were good friends. We had known each other for 10 years.
- ✓ I was surprised when she cut her hair. She'd had long hair since I first met her. اذا ذك نا عدد مرات حدوث الفعل لا يستخدم الماضي التام المستمر بل نستخدم الماضي التام ( لأن الحدث على فترات متقاطعة):
- √ Ahmed had finished typing three reports all night. (had been finishing x)
- √ She had drunk five cups of tea when I was in my office. (had been drinking x)
  - 🕜 الأفعال التي لا تستغرق فترة طويلة (لحظية) لا تأتي في الاستمرارية مثل

#### (break down / stop / close / open / end / finish...)

✓ She was late for the meeting as her car had broken down.

#### Compare

Present perfect continuous (I have been -ing)

- ✓ I hope the bus comes soon. I've been waiting for 20 minutes. (before now)
- √ James is out of breath. He has been running.
  - Past perfect continuous (I had been -ing)
- ✓ At last the bus came. I'd been waiting for 20 minutes (before the bus came)
- ✓ James was out of breath. He had been running.

#### Compare

#### was - ing (past continuous) and had been -ing:

- ✓ It wasn't raining when we went out. The sun was shining. But it had been raining, so the ground was wet.
- ✓ Katherine was sitting in an armchair resting. She was tired because she'd been working very hard.



		<u> </u>
etimorina dan	ماضي تام + ماضي بسيط +	▶ When I arrived at the station, the train had left.
Whom	ماضي بسيط + ماضي تام +	▶ When I had arrived at the station, the train left.
physical marida	ماضي بسيط + ماضي بسيط +	▶ When I arrived, the train left.
	ماضي مستمر + ماضي بسيط +	▶ When I fell, I was playing football.



الحظ الفرق بن:

	in - by - until - since		
	ماضي بسيط سنة ماضية +	▶ In 2000, I studied English.	
in	مستقبل بسيطسنة مستقبلية +	▶ In 2025, I will study English.	
o y	ماضي تام, سنة ماضية +	▶ By 2000, I had studied English.	
by	مستقبل تام سنة مستقبلية +	▶ By 2025, I will have finished my studies.	
until	ماضي تام سنة ماضية +	▶ Until 2000, I hadn't studied English.	
since	مضارع تام سنة ماضية +	▶ Since 2000, I have studied English.	

V+ing في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد (after - before - while - until - since) يأتي بعدهم 🕜

- √ Toka had slept most of the way since leaving Alex.
- √ I had done my homework before watching TV.
- ✓ After doing his homework, he watched TV.

الاحظ أشكال الماضى البسيط مع:

	AND THE PARTY OF T	~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~~
+ didn't + inf.	until - till	
صفة / ظرف / اسم + wasn't / weren't + الفاعل	until - till	
+ wasn't / weren't + P.P (Passive)	until - till	had + P.P فاعل
+ wouldn't + inf.	until - till	
التصريف الثاني للفعل + No one	until - till	

- √ I didn't leave home until my mother had come.
- √ He wasn't sad until he had met his wife.
- √ I wasn't promoted until I had increased my target.
- √ I wouldn't leave the office until I had checked that all the doors were locked.
- √ No one left the office until they had finished all tasks.

📑 للحظ اننا يمكننا استخدام زمن الماضي البسيط المثبت قبل until :

- √ I waited in the park until I found a vacant place.
  - € يمكن استبدال الماضي التام بالماضي البسيط وهذا يعني أنه لا يوجد فاصل زمني كبير بين الحدثين:
- ✓ After I did my homework, I slept. I called him before he entered.
  - 🕤 لاحظ الفرق بين الماضي المستمر و الماضي التام المستمر:
- √ I was doing my homework all day yesterday.
- √ I had been doing my homework all day yesterday before I slept.
  - ◊ لاحظ استخدام because في الماضي في الأمثلة التالية:
- √ I didn't swim because I had forgotten my swimming suit.
- √ I felt very tired because I had been working all day.
- ◊ لابد من مراعاه تسلسل الازمنة
- I went home and discovered that the thief had stolen my money.

لاحظ ان السرقة اول حدث في الجمّلة لذا يوضع في الماضي التام

يمكننًا القول ان غالبا ما يكون الحدث بعد الافعال التالية في زمن الماضي التام

discovered - realised - remembered - found out....

Having + P.P Having been + P.P (Passive)

Having been + P.P (Passive) لاحظ الاختلاف بين

- Having done his homework, he watched TV.
- Haven't been rewarded, Ali continued working hard.









	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:			
	When I rang, he					
	a has already left	<b>b</b> left	© had already left	d is already left		
2	He loved the zoo. He	e wild animals	s before.			
		<b>b</b> has never seen	© never saw	d is never seen		
	Her eyes were red.					
		<b>b</b> had been crying	© was crying	d is been crying		
	She found that the o					
		<b>b</b> had already left	© had already leave	d has already leave		
	Ali went out after he					
-	_	<b>b</b> has eaten		d had eaten		
		ork before the				
-		_	© was leaving	<b>d</b> leaving		
	_	riend again.	<b>6</b> h	(A) hard mat manuma		
-		<b>b</b> has got married	•	d had got marry		
	_	She it for ag		d hasn't clean		
	_	<b>b</b> hasn't cleaned pub was no longer op	_	d Hasiri Clean		
		b has close		d had closed		
		e me. I quite a		W Hud Closed		
		<b>b</b> have changed		d had change		
		the house and a car		a rida change		
		<b>b</b> had stopped		d has stop		
		quiet. Everybody				
		<b>b</b> is going		d was going		
		longer there. They				
		<b>b</b> have left		d had left		
-	couldn't catch the					
		<b>b</b> already left	© had already left	d has left already		
16	The old man said th	at he abroad y	yet.			
	a didn't travel	<b>b</b> hasn't been travel	led © hadn't traveled	d hasn't travelling		
	Fill in gap:	* ( ) ( ) A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	oceaning and the parties of the part			
16	We leave the	e place until he had co	ome.			
		the medicine				
	•	icket, he took the trai				
		ree, he worked as an				
			than he apologized to	o me.		
and the sale	Find the mistake,		than no apologizou s			
60			o obono	r 1		
		ports, he made for the after he had have a		[		
-		o after he had have a lost of her friends lea	_	[ ]		
				[		
44	By 2019, I have finished studying English.  They didn't come. They have arranged something else.					





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	She was afraid beca	ause she befo	ore.	
_			© has never flown	d don't fly
2	How many times	him before you	moved here?	
			© you had met	
3	Jana didn't want to	go to the cinema with	us because she	the movie.
_			© 'd already seen	
4			er until she it.	
			© has written	d had written
5		nt gate, I drove away		
	O locked	<b>b</b> had locked	© being locked	<b>d</b> locking
6	Scarcely a i	new job when he deci	ded to move into a ne	w flat
4			© has he found	d had he found
V		until Samy had throw		
6		<b>b</b> wasn't destroyed		d was destroyed
ŏ			met you at the café?	
4			© do you drink	d has you drunk
			an he lost consciousn	
		<b>b</b> he ate		d does he eat
UU			ad renewed his passp	
99		<b>b</b> wasn't allowed		d allowed
WW.		on by the time the mee		(A) www.cod
16	No scoper	aptured than he esca	© has been agreed	<b>d</b> agreed
				d had he been
	Never before		© he had	d nad ne been
		b she had faced	© did she face	d had she faced
		him before.	G did sile luce	d flud sile fuced
		<b>b</b> have never seen	© had never saw	d have never saw
		nning his shop. He		
		<b>b</b> has sell		d has sold
	Fill in gap:			
16	*** * *********************************	t he had been to Fran	ce and the Ei	ffel Tower
		ad got permission th		ilei Towei.
				n huminal to halp him
				n hurried to help him.
		ondon, he had paid of		
	* *************************************	nto the room when he	e alea.	
-	Find the mistake, t			
20	Ahmed had been fin	ishing typing three re	ports all night.	[]
	On finished my work			[]
40	After the house had	painted, we furnished	d it.	[]
	He didn't sad until he		wing each other for 10	[]



# A dvanced Exercises المحالة

The same of	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	MANAGA BAGA
1	We the car f	or 6 months before w	e discovered it was s	tolen.
	@ were owning	<b>b</b> had been owning	© owned	d had owned
		e car looked a new or		
		<b>b</b> Having been		<b>d</b> After
3	By 2017, I th	ree European countr	ries.	
	(a) visited	<b>b</b> had visited	© had been visiting	d was visiting
4	The sky was cloudy,	so it wasn't	10 a.m. that the sun ap	peared.
	(a) because	<b>b</b> before	© after	<b>d</b> until
6	When we got home I	ast night, we found th	nat somebody	into the flat.
	a has broken	<b>b</b> was breaking	© broke	d had broken
		n I got home. I		
			© worked	d has been working
7	As soon as I	here, I realised that I	had been robbed.	
		<b>b</b> had arrived		d arrive
8		film I didn't wa		
			© was finishing	d had finished
		le the shop h		
		<b>b</b> since		<b>d</b> after
		nemas. They		_
			© had opened	d had open
		ne letter was unreada		
			© Having been writte	n <b>d</b> Had written
12	•	of the crime soon after		
44			© had been informed	d were informed
<b>UE</b>		we visited the		
44			© had ever	
114			s before him v	
46			© being released	(d) releasing
<b>UE</b>	I noticed that he	anything all ever	ning.	
		(b) hasn't said	© hadn't said	d hadn't told
	Fill in gap:			
16	He didn't buy a new	car he had so	old the old one.	
17	When they arrived, t	the filmalread	dy begun.	
18	He was punished for	r what he don	e.	
			had confessed all his	s crimes.
		ch, I like having some		
44			зісер.	
44	Find the mistake, t			
		use she had ever flow		[]
-	-	d the U.S. before you	•	[]
-			vorkers had finished p	
		e had been phoned he		[]
45	Having done, my ho	mework was marked	by the teacher.	





1 wi	ll / shall + inf.	b
2 (al	m - is - are) + going to + inf.	الستقبل البسيط
3 (am - is - are) + v +ing		المضارع المستمر
نعل 🕘	(V or V+s) التصريف الأول للا	المضارع البسيط
6 will be +ing		المستقبل المستمر
6 wi	II have + P.P	المستقبل التام

# will / shall + inf.

Affirmation الاثنات Negative

> Question السؤال

النفي

**Passive** المبنى للمجهول

will / shall + inf. تأتى shall عن I - we

won't / shan't + inf.

will / shall + الفاعل + inf.

will / shall be+ P.P.

↑ We will study English tomorrow.

I shall build a new house next year. We won't study English tomorrow.

♦ I shan't build a new house next year.

Will you study English tomorrow? Yes, we will. No, we wont.

▶ What will you do tomorrow?

English will be studied tomorrow by us.

A new house will be built next year.

**Key words** الكلمات الدالة

وهي كلمات تستخدم مع زمن المستقبل البسيط وللحظ أنهم يأتوا أول الجملة وأخرها مثل:

tomorrow	غدأ	▶ I hope it won't rain tomorrow.
مدة زمنية + next	القادم	Next week, we shall visit the museum.
in the future	في الستقبل	▶ I will travel abroad in the future.
soon	قريبأ	► They will soon speak English well.
shortly	قريبا	Excuse me a moment, I'll be with you shortly.
in a few (months	s - weeks -	I will visit my uncle in a few days.
days - hours - min	utes)	She will finish her study in a few months

# Man resulting

0	تنبؤات بدون دليل	▶ I expect Toka and Jana will stay for lunch.
2	حقائق مستقبلية (العمر)	Next year, I will be 20 years old.
3	القرارات السريعة	Mona has just decided that she will leave.
4	العرض	▶ That bag looks heavy. I'll help you with it.
5	الوعد	I promise I'll buy you a mobile phone.
6		▶ Will you shut the window?
7	للتهديد	▶ Be careful or you will hurt yourself
8	للتحذير بتهديد	▶ Be quiet or I will punish you.
	مع بعض الكلمات مثل	I hope I will see him tomorrow.
9	think, believe, expect,	I expect he will win the race.
4	predict, hope, promise,	I promise I will visit you tomorrow.
Sand	sure, certainly, probably.	▶ I think it will rain.

المستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع الجمل الشرطية unless ـ if في الحالة الأولى

√ If I drop this glass, it will break. √ Unless he studies hard, he will fail.

@يستخدم المستقبل البسيط مع الروابط في ازمنة المضارع (....after - before - when - until - as soon as...)









- ✓ After I (do) have done my homework, I'll go to bed.
- ✓ As soon as she arrives (has arrived) in London, she will call me.
- ✓ Before he types the reports, he will have dinner.
- ✓ When it gets warmer, the snow will start to melt.



- √ He won't come until I phone (have phoned) him.
- ✓ I won't leave until I write (have written) this report.

الصفات الشخصية لا تعتبر دليل لذا بأتي معها will

✓ My brother is intelligent so he will join a good faculty.



**Affirmation** 

الإثبات

Negative النفي

Question السؤال

**Passive** المبنى للمجهول

(am - is - are) + going ↑ She is going to study French as planned.

They are going to visit Cairo.

(am not - isn't - aren't) \*> She isn't going to study French as planned.

They aren't going to visit Cairo.

+ going to + inf. (Am - Is - Are) + الفاعل → Is she going to study French as planned?

X No. she isn't. Yes, she is. + going to + inf.

(am - is - are) + going to↑ French is going to be studied as planned. Cairo is going to be visited.

g5	تنبؤات مع وجود دليل	Look at those black clouds. It's going to rain.
0		▶ He can't swim. He is going to drown.
- E		I feel terrible. I think I'm going to be sick.
	الخطط المستقبلية	▶ Toka is going to play. She has planned that.
2	(plan . made a plan)	▶ I have a plan. I am going to start my project.
	النوايا	▶ He is going to visit London. He has intended that.
8	(intend - intention)	We are going to visit Cairo. We have intention.
***	القرارات المسقة	They have decided they are going to study.
4	(decide- make a decision	She has made up her mind. She is going to leave.
ed	- made up mind)	Ive made my decision. I am going to travel abroad.
	أشياء على وشك الحدوث	➤ Watch out! You're going to fall.
6		▶ Be careful! You are going to break it.
		1 CONTRACTOR OF THE PROPERTY O



#### Compare

- √ "Ali phoned while you were out." "OK. I'll call him back."
  - "Ali phoned while you were out." "Yes, I know. I'm going to call him back."
- ✓ "Mai is in hospital." "Oh really? I didn't know. I'll go and visit her."
  - " Mai is in hospital." "Yes, I know. I'm going to visit her this evening."

• لاحظ أن بعض الكلمات الدالة على Will إذا جاء دليل نستخدم be going to

think - believe - sure

- I think it will rain.
- √ It is cloudy. I think it is going to rain. ② لاحظ الصفات الشخصية لا تعتبر دليل اما الصفات المؤقتة تعتبر دليل
- My brother is intelligent so he will join a good faculty.
- ✓ I am very ill so I am going to see a doctor.

# (am - is - are) + V + ing

**Affirmation** الاثبات

Negative النفي

Question السؤال

**Passive** المبنى للمجهول

- She is studying French as arranged.
- (am is are) + V + ing They are cooking meals as prepared.
- (am not isn't aren't) † She isn't studying French as arranged. + V+ina
  - They aren't cooking meals as prepared.
  - ♦ Is she studying French as arranged? (am - is - are) + الفاعل Yes, she is. X No. she isn't.
- (am is are) + being †> French is being studied as arranged. ♦ Meals are being cooked as prepared.

# Maries Malley

(arranged, booked, bought, made arrangements, prepare, all is okay) 2

6

- He is visiting his uncle. He has arranged.
  - ▶ He is catching the 3 o'clock train. He has made arrangements.
  - I am having dinner with Toka. I have booked a table.
- He's getting married next Friday. ► He's getting married next Friday.
- ، The school inspector is coming on Thursday من حفلات وأعياد ميلاد / سفر / زيـارات ر
  - ▶ Our school is taking part in a competition next week.
- ا عدم مقدره فعل شيء في المستقبل نتيجة ا can't meet you tomorrow as I am doing the shopping. She can't call you tonight as she is visiting her uncle. ▶

# Present Simple (inf. or inf. + s)

**Affirmation** اللثبات

Negative النفي

Question السؤال

**Passive** المبنى للمجهول

- (V or V+s) التصريف الأول للفعل
- The English class starts at 7.
- My train arrives at 7 tomorrow.
- ♦ My train doesn't arrive at 7 tomorrow (doesn't - don't) + inf. The English class never starts at 7.
- (Does Do) + الفاعل + inf. Does the train arrive at 7 o' clock? Yes, it does. No. it doesn't.
  - (is are) + P.P
- +> French is studied at 7 o' clock.
- Meals are cooked every day.



# Ciants' Gramma



حدث في المستقبل طبقاً لحدول أو تقويم (مواصلات / فتح وغلق/ بداية ونهاية / دراسة / سينما / مسح)

- The train legues at 7:30 a.m.
- The plane takes off at 9 a.m.
- Our lesson starts at 12 p.m.



#### will be + V + ing

**Affirmation** الاثنات

> Negative النفي

Question السؤال

Passive المبنى للمجهول

**Kev words** الكلمات الدالة will be + V + ing

will be + P.P

- She will be studying French at 7 tomorrow.
- They will be cooking meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.
- She won't be studying French at 7 tomorrow.
- won't be + V + ing They won't be cooking meals from 8 to 9 tomorrow.
- will الفاعل be + V + ↑> Will she be studying French at 7 tomorrow? Yes, she will. No. she won't. ina
  - French will be studied at 7 tomorrow.
  - Meals will be cooked from 8 to 9 tomorrow.
- at......tomorrow.......from ...... to This time next.... at ....next ....

between.....and ... tomorrow morning.....

2

#### Man Real Color

يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون مستمراً في نقطة معينة في الستقيل.

- At 10 tomorrow, he will be in his office, he will be working.
  - ▶ This time tomorrow I will be sitting in the cinema. I will be watching a movie.
    - ▶ At this time tomorrow, the engine will be repaired.
      - In the future. I'll be playing tennis from 7 to 9 p.m.
        - Don't phone between 7 and 8. We'll be having dinner. للحديث عن ما تم ترتبيها وتخطيطها في الستقيل.

At 9.30 next Tuesday, we will be attending her wedding party.

#### Compare

#### will be - ing with other continuous forms:

- ✓ At 10 o'clock yesterday, Sally was in her office. She was working. (past)
- √ It's 10 o'clock now. She is in her office. She is working. (present)
- ✓ At 10 o'clock tomorrow, she will be in her office. She will be working. (future)

#### will have + P.P.

Affirmation الاثبات

> Negative النفي

Question السؤال

**Passive** المبنى للمجهول will have + P.P

won't have + P.P

♦ By next year, I will have finished my studies.

◆▶ She will have studied French by 7 tomorrow.

♦ By next year, I won't have finished my studies.

♦ She won't have studied French by 7 tomorrow.

Will you have finished your studies by next year?

will الفاعل have + P.P Yes, I will, No. I won't.

By next year, my studies will have been finished. French will have been studied by 7 tomorrow.



**Key words** 

by (-سنة قادمة - next..... - tomorrow - سنة قادمة )

by the time

الكلمات الدالة

by... = before = يحلول في خلال فترة زمنية.....in

This time tomorrow

in (a year's / four months' / five weeks' / an hour's / ten minutes') time

# Kennesh Men

	His new house will have been built by 2030.
يستخدم للتعبير عن حدث سوف يكون قد انتهي أو تم قبل حدث آخر في المستقبل.	<ul> <li>Before our parents come, we will have tidied our room.</li> <li>In five years, a lot of books will have been published.</li> </ul>

#### Compare

#### will have (done) with other perfect forms:

- ✓ Ted and Amy have been married for 24 years. (present perfect)
- ✓ Next year they will have been married for 25 years. (future perfect)
- ✓ When their son was born, they had been married for three years, (past perfect)

# tricks

# مراج المراجعة المراجع

- ¶ After Ali (had finished has finished) his work, he will call us.
- She won't leave until she (has had had had has been) her money.
- It is cloudy. I think (will is going to) rain.
- It is cloudy. I (won't am not going to) go out.
- The shop (will be opening opens) from 9 until 6 tomorrow.
- I think our lesson (starts will start) at 6 o'clock.
- ¶ She is very clever. She (will is going to) get full marks.
- He is very tired. He (will is going to) see a doctor.
- The President (will visit is going to visit is visiting) Aswan tomorrow.
- 10 I expect we (shall are going to) win the cup.
- **10** After (has call had called calling) her, I will tell you what happens.
- This novel (will be published will publish will be come out) soon.
- I have just decided that I (am going to will) buy this dress.
- **Q** The water is boiling. I (will am going to) turn off the cooker.
- (E) can't meet you tomorrow as I (will revise will be revising) my lessons.



There is no way to happiness.

Happiness is the way





# Elementary Exercises

	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:				
1	Look, this glass is c	racked It					
	a is going to break		© will break	d will be breaking			
2		seven every evening.		•			
_		<b>b</b> is going to begin	© begins	<b>d</b> is beginning			
3		g. It bite you.					
	(a) is		© is going to	d is being			
4		16 on Saturda					
4	am being	<b>b</b> is going to be	© will be	d am			
E	I there for yo			_			
4		<b>b</b> am going to be	© will have been	d will be			
6	me a favour						
4	@ Will you do	<b>b</b> Are you doing	© Do you do	d Are you going to do			
V	Mother the h	ouse work between 1	10 a.m. and 2 p.m. ton	norrow.			
6	(a) is doing	<b>b</b> will have done	© will be doing	d will be			
ŏ		the match tomorrov					
	(a) win	<b>b</b> will win	© are winning	<b>d</b> are going to win			
9	We studying	this book by the end	of this year.				
44		<b>b</b> will be finishing	© will have finished	<b>d</b> are finishing			
TIV	I think it hot			<b>2</b>			
44	(a) will be	<b>b</b> will have been	c is going to be	d is being			
UU		/. I a shower.					
44		<b>b</b> will have had		d am having			
UZ		y. I you to car		<b>a</b>			
44		<b>b</b> am helping		d will help			
<b>U</b> E		row, I on a tra		<b>A</b>			
90		<b>b</b> will have travelled		d will be travelling			
UC		ht, I all my hon					
46	(a) WIII TINISH	<b>b</b> is going to finish	© will be finishing	d will have finished			
<b>UE</b>		usins in Tanta as plan		<b>(1)</b>			
		<b>b</b> am going to stay	© will be staying	d will stay			
	> Fill in gap:		Militaria ( a.				
16	Our team trains hard	d, I think they	win the match.				
		ve. He finish t					
		omorrow be S	Saturday.				
	🍳 Amal another baby next March.						
20	The baby is crying lo	oudly, his mother	feed him right nov	N.			
	Find the mistake, t	hen correct it:					
21	In four years' time, s	he will have been fini	shed her education.	[]			
22	At five o'clock tomo	rrow, she will travellin	g on a train to Alex.	[]			
23	Watch out! The car will hit you!						
24	In the future, most o	four work will do by r	nachines.	[]			
25	Our school takes no	rt in the sports compe	atition novt wook	r			





A COLUMN	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:					
1	They a new	factory in this area by	the end of 2030.					
		<b>b</b> will be building	•	d are building				
		k she the full						
	a) is going to get	<b>b</b> will have got	© will get	d will be getting				
-		ment. I my ho						
	(a) do	<b>(b)</b> will do	© am doing	d have done				
4	I won't be able to tal	lk to you all the day to	morrow because I	my homework.				
	a would be doing	<b>b</b> will have done	© will be doing	d may do				
		I at university						
		<b>b</b> will be studied		d will have studied				
		or on Thursday	_					
		<b>b</b> is coming		<b>d</b> comes				
		English course. It						
	(a) will start	<b>b</b> is starting	© is going to start	<b>d</b> starts				
8	Mother the	nouse work between	10 a.m. and 2 p.m. ton	norrow.				
	(a) is doing	<b>b</b> will have done	© will be doing	d will be				
9	By 2030, new well-p	aid jobs avail	lable in Egypt.					
	(a) will be	<b>b</b> will have been	© had been	d were being				
10	It's 35 degrees and	it's only 7 a.m. It	very hot today.					
	@ was	<b>b</b> is going to be	© is being	d will be being				
11		dstorm. I the v						
	will be closing	<b>b</b> am going to close	© will have closed	d will close				
12		ets. They to E						
		<b>b</b> will fly						
13		k fair to buy the books						
		<b>b</b> am going to go		d will go				
14	By next month, my	elder brother	for 10 years.					
		<b>b</b> is going to marry	© will marry	ill have been married				
16	If you like, I							
	@ am making	<b>b</b> will make	© am going to make	dmakes				
	Fill in gap:			,				
16	What time y	our plane take off?						
17	I am sure I climb this mountain soon.							
18	🛚 Tidy your room or I let you go to club.							
Q After I have studied, I watch TV.								
She is flying to London next week, her flight off at 7 a.m.								
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:						
21	I would be18 next N	londay.		[]				
	According to the timetable, the next bus will move at 10 a.m.							
	The cup is on the edge of the table. It will fall.							
	It is very hot in the house. I am going to turn on the air conditioner.							
	Don't be late. The bus leave at exactly ten o'clock!							



# Advanced Exercises Mark

A							
	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c o	r d:					
1	I feel terrible with a severe stomach. I think I be sick.						
	(a) should (b) am going to		d) will				
2	Her wedding party held next Sun	day	•				
	(a) is being (b) will be	© is going to be	d will have				
3	I've bought a new suit. I it at the p	earty topicalt	W WIII HAVE				
	a am going to wear b would wear		d am wearing				
4	Toka married next June. All is we		d am wearing				
	(a) gets (b) is getting						
G			d will get				
4	She tomorrow evening. She has possible to the share	packed ner bags.					
6	(a) is leaving (b) leave	© will leave	d have left				
· ·	Scientists say that by 2020, the glaciers i	n Montana					
6	(a) are melting (b) will have melted	© melt	d have melted				
u	Sorry, I can't come because I ten	inis with Yehia tomorr	ow.				
6	(a) am going to play (b) will have played	© will play	d am playing				
ŏ	By 2025, the ICDL certificate by h						
	@ earned	<b>b</b> will have been ear	ned				
	© have earned	d will have earned					
9	They've got the tickets; they to Lo	ondon.					
44	(a) will have flown (b) are going to fly	© are flying	d will fly				
10	I can't meet you tonight as I for th	ne exam.					
	(a) going to revise (b) will have been revised (c) will revise (d) am revisin						
90	My brother is intelligent. He the m	aths exam easily.					
	(a) will pass (b) is going to pass		d going to pass				
12	I didn't charge my mobile phone. The batt						
	(a) will run (b) shall run	© is going to run	d runs				
18	This old-aged tree isn't safe to sit under. I						
	(a) will fall (b) is falling	© is going to fall	d falls				
14	A: We have not got any sugar. B: I know, I	some this eve					
	(a) will buy (b) am going to buy						
16	I Ali tomorrow morning. He accep	oted my invitation and	booked a flight				
	(a) will meet (b) am meeting	© am going to meet	d meet				
	Fill in gap:	o am going to most					
46	The museum typically at 8 a.m.						
46	My little grandchild be three next Friday.						
46	The water is boiling. I turn the gas off.						
90	The next Olympic Games in Lond	on.					
	A new bridge built here by the go	vernment by the end o	of this year.				
	Find the mistake, then correct it:						
21	The sky is too dark, I am not going to go fo	or a walk.	[]				
22	I am going out tomorrow. I haven't decide	ed vet.	[				
23	There's a train leaves at six o'clock tomorrow. I hope I will catch it.						
24	Ahmed has an appointment with a dentist. He will see doctor next Monday. [						
25	Watch out! You cut yourself.		[]				

108





#### 1) Present Passive Forms

Tense	Active րցեւո	Passive Jongo
Present Simple المضارع البسيط	(v / v + s) ▶ Jana watches TV.	(am - is - are) + p.p. ▶ TV is watched by Jana.
Present continuous المضارع المستمر	(am - is - are) + v + ing  ▶ Jana is watching TV.	(am - is - are) + being + p.p.  ➤ TV is being watched by Jana.
Present Perfect المضارع التام	(have - has) + p.p.  Jana has watched TV.	(have - has) + been + p.p.  TV has been watched by Jana.
Present Perfect continuous مضارع تام مستمر	(have - has) + been + v+ ing  Jana has been watching TV.	(have - has) + been + p.p.  TV has been watched by Jana.

#### 2) Future Passive Forms

Tense	Active poleo	Passive Joogo
Future Simple المستقبل البسيط	will + inf. ▶ Jana <mark>will watch</mark> TV.	will be + p.p. ▶ TV will be watched by Jana.
Future continuous المستقبل المستمر	will be + v + ing  ▶ Jana will be watching TV.	will be + p.p.  TV will be watched by Jana.
Future Perfect المستقبل التام	will have + p.p  Jana will have watched TV.	will have been + p.p.  TV will have been watched by Jana.

#### 3) Past Passive Forms

Tense	Active pglco	Passive סַבְּמוּנֶּן
Past Simple	التصريف الثاني للفعل / v+ed	(was - were) + p.p.
الماضي البسيط	Jana watched TV.	TV was watched by Jana.
Past continuous	(was - were) + v + ing	(was - were) + being + p.p.
الماضي المستمر	Jana was watching TV.	TV was being watched by Jana.
Past Perfect	had + p.p.	had + been + p.p.
الماضي التام	Jana had watched TV.	TV had been watched by Jana.
Past Perfect continuous	had + been + v+ ing	had + been + p.p.
الماضي التام المستمر	Jana had been watching TV.	TV had been watched by Jana.



#### 4) The Passive Infinitive

Worte	meaning	Active pglco	مجمول Passive
must	يجب أن	must + inf.	must + be + p.p
need to	يحتاج أن	need to + inf.	need to + be + p.p
should / ought to	يجب أن	should / ought to + inf.	should / ought to + be + p.p
can / could	يستطيع / استطاع	can / could + inf.	can / could + be + p.p
may / might	ربما	may / might+ inf.	may / might + be + p.p
(am-is-are) going	سوف to	(am-is-are) going to+ inf.	(am-is-are) going to + be+ p.p
have to / has to	يجب أن	have to / has to + inf.	have to / has to + be + p.p
had to	کان یجب ان	had to + inf.	had to + be + p.p
will have to	سوف ينبغي أن	will have to + inf.	will have to + be+ p.p
am to / is to / are	يجب أن to	am to /is to/ are to + inf.	am to / is to / are to+ be+ p.p
was to / were to	كان يجب أن	was to/ were to + inf.	was to / were to + be + p.p
در to + أي فعل	أفعال بعدهاto والمص	V + to+ inf.	V + to + be + p.p
be able to	قادر علي	be able to + inf.	be able to + be + p.p
be about to	يكون علي وشك	be about to + inf.	be about to + be + p.p
used to	اعتاد ان	used to + inf.	used to + be + p.p

#### 5) Special cases

#### أثرى معلوماتك

ي للمجهول	إلى المبنر	الآتية	الجمل	تحويل	طريقة	للحظ	
-----------	------------	--------	-------	-------	-------	------	--

ألأفعال التي يليها مفعول ثم مصدر بدون to عند التحويل للمجهول نأتي ب to قبل المصدر [

🗐 للحظ طريقة تحويل الجمل الأتية إلى المبنى للمجهول.

Active He will make us leave. Passive We will be made to leave.

🗐 للحظ الأفعال التي يليها مفعول ثم مصدر مع 🝵

Active	▶ He teaches them to write well.
Passive	They are taught to write well.
Active	I'd like you to introduce me to the new manager.
Passive	▶ I'd like to be introduced to the new manager.

أ في حالة وجود فعل مضاف له (ing) نستخدم في المبنى للمجهول (being + P.P)

	اً في حاله وجود فعل مصاف له (ing) تستخدم في المبني للمجهول (being + P.P )	
Active	▶ I don't like people telling me what to do.	

Passive ► I don't like being told what to do.

Active ► He went into the building without anyone seeing him.

Passive He went into the building without being seen (by anyone).

الجملة الأمرية Passive

14	The second secon	t + رامحف + be + p.p
	Active	▶ Open the door.

Passive Let the door be opened. Or The door should be opened.

Don't let + Jgcio + be + p.p

Active Don't open the door.

Passive Don't let the door be opened.

فى الإثبات نستخدم:

🗐 وفي النفي نستخدم:



#### ملاحظات هامة على المبنى للمجهول

1et تحويلات المبنى للمجهول مع كلمة

- √ He let me answer the question.
  - = let  $\rightarrow$  (be) allowed to +
- ✓ I was allowed to answer the question.
- √ He let people cheat him.
  - الاحظ في حالة وجود Let والفاعل هو نفسه المفعول نستخدم الشكل التالي: (Let + فيمر منعكس + be + p.p.)
- ✓ He let himself be cheated
- ن يمكن مع بعض الأفعال استبدال (be) ب (get) في زمن الجملة
- √ The police arrested the thief.
- √ The thief (was / got) arrested by the police.
- ✓ She got divorced in 2015.
- لاحظ الفرق: ✓ I will have answered the question. ✓ The question will have been answered.
- ✓ I will have to answer the question. ✓ The question will have to be answered.
  - الناقص: التالية ثعامل معاملة الفعل الناقص:

be going to / be allowed to / be supposed to / had better / would rather / be to / be about to

- ✓ I am going to answer the question. ✓ The question is going to be answered.
- √ The problem is about to be solved.

#### تحول التركيبات الآتية في المبنى للمجهول كالآتي:

believe - think report - expect predict- allege

People

say - know

deny understand suppose announce الله (is - was - has been - had been) + p.p that وضع it وضع أله الثانية الثانية

Subject + (v.be) + p.p + to + (inf)

المارع

Subject + (v.be) + p.p + to have + p.p

استخدام مفعول الجملة الثانية

object + (v.be) + p.p + to + be + p.p

المضارع

الماضي

object + (v.be) + p.p + to have been + p.p

الماضي

#### ومن الجمالة في المضارع \_

Active	People expect that Ahmed will win the match.		
Passive0	It is expected that Ahmed will win the match.		
Passive@	▶ Ahmed is expected to win the match.		
Passive@	▶ The match is expected to be won by Ahmed.		
Passive	r The match is expected to be won by Ahmed.		

ومن الجملة مُي الماضي

Active	People said that Toka studied English.
Passive 0	It was said that Toka studied English.
Passive@	▶ Toka was said to have studied English.
<b>Passive €</b>	▶ English was said to have been studied by Toka.



شرطين لابد من توافرهم في الجملة المبنية للمحهول:

♦ لابد أن تحتوي الجملة على V.be وهم 8 تصريفات ويتم الاختياري ما بينهم طبقا للزمن.

(am - is - are - was - were - be - been - being)

- ☼ لابد أن نختار التصريف الثالث للفعل بإضافة ed أو حفظ الأفعال الشاذة.
- 🗐 كيف يمكننا معرفة أن الجملة مبنية للمجهول؟ ويوجد بعض الصيغ نعلم منها أن الجملة مبنية للمجهول



الفاعل by الفاعل by الفاعل to ..... to ..... that .....



هذا الجدول يساعد في التعامل مع سؤال اللختياري في أسئلة المبني للمجهول

		**	A CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF TH
كلمات وروابط دالة علي الزمن	زمن الفعل	في المجهولV.beصيغة	التصريف الثالث
every - always - never - often	مضارع بسيط	(am - is - are)	
now - look - listen - at the moment	مضارع مستمر	(am - is - are) being	
for - since - just - already - yet - recently - never	مضارع تام	(have - has) <u>been</u>	
yesterday ago-lastin + سنة سابقة	ماضي بسيط	was - were	
yesterday - while - as - just as - when	ماضي مستمر	(was - were) being	
after - as soon as - because - before - by the time no sooner - when	ماضي تام	had <u>been</u>	<u>a</u>
(will - would - can - could - shall -should - may - might - must - have to - has to)	الأفعال الناقصة	be + الفعل الناقص	
is to / are to / was to / were to.	be to	is to <u>be</u>	
أفعال يأتي بعدها to المصدر مثل promise - hope	V + to	V + to + <u>be</u>	
ing امثل admit - suggest افعال يأتي بعدها	V + ing	V + <u>being</u>	
طبقاً لزمن الجملة الثانية.	It that	is - was - has been - had been - will be	

### tricks

## مكن تعاول تشهر و تكتب سبب الاختيار

- A lot of cars (produced are produced) in Japan.
- ♠ A lot of cars (produced are produced) in Japan, are of a good quality.
- He could escape without (be seen seen being seen).
- 1 The thief was thought (to have killed to have been killed) the little boy.
- € The thief was supposed to (be arrested have been arrested) by the police.
- (Being arrested be arrested) by the police, the thief was sent to prison.
- When (done doing), our homework was corrected by my teacher.
- I'd like my new house ( to build to be built being built) in the city center.
- I borrowed my brother's car while I (was repairing my car was being repaired was having my car repaired) at the mechanic's.
- (Having arrested Having been arrested) by the police, the thief was taken to prison.



4511111111111111<u>6</u>







	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:	ALIE TARABARA		
1	Money to Eg	ypt by the tourists.				
	(a) brings	<b>b</b> is bringing	© is brought	d are brought		
2	Nothing else	. to stop the merchant	ts' fighting yesterday,	Unfortunately, one		
	of them was killed.					
	a didn't do	<b>b</b> is done	© wasn't done	d was done		
3	English, by	millions of people wor	Idwide, is an internat	ional language.		
	(a) is spoken	<b>b</b> spoken	<b>C</b> speaking	d to be spoken		
4	English all o	ver the world nowada	ıys.			
	(a) is spoken	<b>b</b> has spoken	© speaks	d is speaking		
5	In Egypt, electricity	from the High	Dam.			
	(a) generated	<b>b</b> has generated	© is generated	d will be generated		
6	Since the bridge	, it will help the to	raffic flow.			
	a was built	<b>b</b> has been built	© has built	d will be built		
7	This organization	in Egypt, but ha	s branches in many o	ther countries.		
		<b>b</b> basing				
8		cident took place on				
		<b>b</b> reports		d has been reported		
9		believed less				
	(a) to be studying	<b>b</b> that they studied	© to have studied	d to study		
10		hat on the tab				
		<b>b</b> was left		d is left		
11	I hope this book					
	(a) will find	<b>b</b> will be found	© were found	d had been found		
12	Scientific articles	in this paper.				
	(a) be published	<b>b</b> are being publish	© are published	d have published		
18	A woman's work					
	@ is		© would	<b>d</b> were		
14		nome, his lunch				
		<b>b</b> was being made	© had made	d has been made		
16	The "Days"					
	@ was written	<b>b</b> were written	© was writing	d had written		
	Fill in gap:	a service as a december that are a	,	}		
16	These reports	written last week.	A THE RESIDENCE OF THE RESIDENCE AND ADDRESS OF THE RESIDENCE OF T	n, Jan. (n. non.us megeshera)		
		stolen yesterd				
	Where thes					
	Children su					
		amination, the patient	t sent home.			
*****	Find the mistake,					
66		ve when he tells the tr	uth	[]		
				pioneer. []		
	The thieves weren'		ine of the mat space	[		
	Everything has don	9 9		[]		
	English has spoken			[]		
यर	English has spoken	i ali over ule world.				





Mark قىم نفسك

25

The sale	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:		
1	His wife is ill so their	r house every	day.		
_			©wasn't cleaned	<b>d</b> did:	n't clean
2	that Egypt is	s a great country.			
	(a) It is known	<b>b</b> It knows	© It is knowing	<b>d</b> Egy	pt is known
3	I was advised	by a doctor, but it w	vas not possible.		
	(a) seeing	<b>b</b> to be seen	© to see	<b>d</b> beir	ig seen
4	Her book, s	so she is unable to do	my exercises.		
4	@ was lost	<b>b</b> is losing	© has been lost	<b>d</b> has	got lost
E		o their best in case of			
4		<b>b</b> have asked	© asked	d are	asking
0	The school rules				
6		<b>b</b> have been		d have	e to been
V	Not much ak	out this complicated	subject.	<b>a</b>	
6			© is going to know	d is kr	nown
ŏ	Nothing to sa			•	
	(a) Did	<b>b</b> done	© was done	<b>d</b> was	doing
4		s competition at the v			
46		<b>b</b> took		<b>d</b> had	taken
UU		ool, but at hor		<b>A</b>	Annual A
44		was learning		(a) was	taught
W		which to him.		<b>A</b>	annt.
10	L'Il buy a now bouce	<b>b</b> was sending	c nas sent	d was	sent
<b>U</b> G		as soon as the old on		(A) has	haan
18		to be burt often a	© will be city centre road acci	d has	been
44	A lamous player	h is believed	© believed	dent.	believed
14			attract the world till n		belleved
44	huilt	by the Fharaons, a	© were built	d are	built
16		out very soor		w are	Dom
-			© is found	(d) will	be found
Marie Land	Fill in gap:	w min be midnig	C 15 Toolia		DC 10011G
		-1			
		ches eaten?			
	I was given this water				
		invented by Bell in			
19	Lazy students are us	sed to things o	done for them.		
20	I sent for sh	opping yesterday.			
4-14(0),	Find the mistake, t				
00		e to the bookshop, all	books had be sold		r 1
20	All the apple juice de	rank by nine o'clock.	books had be sold.		[
23	The house is going t	o knock down			[
			done before it's too la	ite	[
26	I didn't believe what	had said	aone pelote it a too is	ite.	
44	. S. S. L NOIIO VO WITCH				F



# 3 Advanced Exercises Mark

	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	rd:	***	
1	He should	that today is Sunday.			
	a been told	<b>b</b> had been told	© have been told	d have being told	
2	The men at	ter the explosion.			
	are said to be ar		<b>b</b> said to be arreste		
_	© are said to being		d are said to have b	peen arrested	
3	Four people	in a train crash.		<b>A</b> ****	
_	a have been killed	<b>b</b> have killed	© are killed	d was killed	
4	The Nobel Prize wi	nner is going t	he keys of the city.		
4		<b>b</b> to be given		d to be giving	
E		She interview	_	(A) to the second	
(a) is (b) is being (c) was (d) has been					
b		vant left alone		(A) being	
6		<b>b</b> be	© to be	<b>d</b> being	
V	Many magnificent	palaces and museums	In our city ia	A house been built	
6		b has built			
0	ne people next do	or disappeared 6 mon	ins ago. They	Since then.	
0				dweren't being seen	
4		ning with snow <b>(b) were covered</b>		d are covered	
40		or, it painted.	C WIII COVE	G die covered	
U	@ is just	<b>b</b> has just been	will just be	d have just been	
44		yesterday was really t		•	
44		<b>b</b> which showed		d which was showing	
10		/ large and took four m		<b>3</b>	
-	a being painted	<b>b</b> to be painted	© to paint	<b>d</b> be painted	
16	in a car ac	cident, she never wan	ted to drive again.	•	
-	Being injuring	<b>b</b> Injured	© Injure	<b>d</b> Being Injured	
10	Ali is looking forwa	ard toas the be	st player.		
		<b>b</b> choose		d be chosen	
16	Don't let yourself				
	(a) cheated		© be cheated	<b>d</b> being cheated	
	> Fill in gap:				
		inally arrested after	chased for hal	f an hour.	
	This school				
	He wants this job .	_			
		given on the radio at th	nis moment.		
		called a milk b			
Mor	> Find the mistake	the state of the s			
26		ing sent for at night.		[]	
26	The special inform	ation aren't published	in the newspapers v	esterday.[]	
	If you leave money			[]	
		ig very quickly now.		[]	
		omework was marked	l by Al Daifi.	[]	
_			-		

# GIANTS

#### **Giants' Grammar**



📦 بمعنى (الذي / التي) وتحل محل الفاعل العاقل (يأتي بعدها فعل) ولا يمكن حذفها

- √ An architect is someone who (that) designs buildings.
- √ My uncle Ali, who is a businessman, lives in Cairo.
- √ The woman who lives next door is a doctor.
- √ We know a lot of people who (that) live in the country.

💼 بمعنى (الذي / التي) وتحل محل المفعول العاقل (يأتي بعدها فاعل ويمكن حذفها)

- √ The person, who she's visiting, is her uncle.
- √ The woman who I wanted to see was away on holiday.
- ✓ Do you know the woman who (that) Ali is talking to?

معنى (الذي / التي) تحل محل المفعول العاقل ويمكن حذفها ولَّابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل ويمكن أن يأتي معها حرف حرف حر

- √ The man whom you saw in the party is my brother.
- √ Ali is a person whom (that) I admire very much.
- √ I like the people with whom I work.

🗐 بمعنى (الذي / التي) وتحل محل فاعل غير عاقل

- √ I bought a car which is new.
- √ Toka told me about her new job, which she's enjoying a lot.

🗐 بمعنى (الذي/التي) وتحل محل مفعول غير عاقل (ويمكن حذفها)

- √ The food which you cook tastes delicious.
- √ We stayed at the Park Hotel, which a friend of ours recommended.
- √ Yesterday, we visited the City Museum, which I'd never been to before.



🗐 بمعنى " حيث" وتعود على المكان وللبد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل (لا يأتي بعدها فعل)

- √ This is the room where (in which) I sleep (which I sleep in).
- √ The restaurant where we had lunch was near the airport.
- ✓ I recently went back to the town where I grew up.
- √ I would like to live in a place where there is plenty of sunshine.



اسم (عاقل أو غير عاقل)



اسم (عاقل أوغير عاقل)

🧊 تحل محل الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم (أي لا يأتي بعدها فعل مطلقا)

- √ I visit Nada whose father is an engineer.
- √ A window is a woman whose husband is dead.
- √ What's the name of the man whose car you borrowed?
- ✓ I met someone whose brother I went to school with.

زمن

when (on - in - at) which

فاعل

- 🗐 بمعنى " حين / حينما "ولابد أن يأتي بعدها فاعل أو مفعول.
- √ Friday is the day when (on which) we get up late.
- ✓ June is the month when (in which) we don't go to school.

Note

the day / the year / the time .....etc.

(something happens)

- √ I can't meet you on Friday. That's the day (that) I'm going away.
- √ The last time (that) I saw Anna, she looked great.
- √ I haven't seen Jack and Helen since the year (that) they got married.

فعل



فاعل

🧻 بمعنی " ما / ماذا "و تربط بفعل.

- ✓ Do you understand what I am saying?
- ✓ We'd better decide what we need to buy.
- ✓ Did you hear what they said?

عاقل / غير عاقل



فاعل / فعل

- ✓ Do you know anyone who / that speaks French and Italian?
- ✓ Grace works for a company which / that makes furniture.
  - الا تستخدم (that) في الجمل الاعتراضية بعد (ر):
- √ John, who (not that) speaks French and Italian, works as a tour guide.
- ✓ Anna told me about her new job, which (not that) she's enjoying a lot.
- ✓ Cairo, which is the capital, is very crowded.

شاك حالات لابد أن نستخدم فيها (that) =

أ. إذا كانت أي من الكلمات التالية تصف الاسم الذي يعود عليه ضمير الوصل

all - any - some - every - only - many - much - few

- ✓ I lent her all the money that she needed.
- ✓ Everything that they said was true.
- √ I gave her all the money that I had.

بدمع صفات التفضيا،

- √ The fox is the cleverest animal that I have ever seen.
  - ج\_ إذا كانت تعود على عاقل وغير عاقل في نفس الوقت.
- √ I told him about the leaders and the places that I admired.

ولكل دارسي اللغة الإنجليزية





#### Gianis' Gramma

#### **Omission of relative pronouns**

- ▲ بتم حذف كل من (who which whom) عندما يحلوا محل مفعول (اي إذا حاء بعدهم فاعل):
- ✓ This is the woman who I helped.

= This is the woman I helped.

• يمكن حذف كل من (who - which) اذا حاء بعدهم فعل في الحالات التالية:

أ اذا جاء بعدهم فعل مبنى للمعلوم وفي هذه الحالة يتم حذف الضمير و اضافة (v+ing)أما أذا (be) يحذف ويتبقى (v+ing):

- ✓ The girl who is eating ice cream comes first.
  - = The girl eating ice cream comes first.
- ✓ Everyone, who entered the building, was searched by nthe police.
  - = Everyone entering the building was searched by nthe police.

بد إذا جاء بعدهم صيغة مبنى للمجهول وهنا نحذف أيضا الضمير و(verb to be) وبيقى التصريف الثالث للفعل.

- ✓ The man who is called Omer helps the poor.
  - = The man colled Omer helps the poor.

#### • تعل which محل المكان إذا استخدم كشيء أو وصف. وتعل where بعد الغبر عاقبل إذا استخدم كمكان.

**Important** Notes

- This is my house which I bought.
- This is my house which is quite big. (which is new)
- √ This is my bag where I put my books.
- 🕜 بمكننا استخدم حروف جر قبل (which whom) مثل (in on at to for by ) طبقاً للمعنى
- ✓ Can you tell me for which (why) you were absent yesterday?
- ✓ The train by which I came arrived late.
- ✓ She went to meetings at which she learnt how to read and write.
- ✓ He said something for which he should apologize.
- ✓ I read an article in which the writer expresses his opinion of globalization.
- √ Ali is the boy by whom I was helped.
- "I can't tell vou." ✓ She asked me where I had been, to which I replied,
- ✓ Fortunately we had a good map, without which we would have got lost.
  - 3 لابد من تحديد على ماذا يعود ضمير الوصل ومراعاة حروف جر كما يلي
- ✓ I played a match with my friend, which was exciting.

رغم وجود عاقل قبل ضمير الوصل إلا أن ضمير الوصل يعود على المباراة.

✓ I met Ahmed in the street who was very tired.

رغم وجود مكان قبل ضمير الوصل الا أن ضمير الوصل يعود الشخص. @ لا يمكننا استخدم حرف جر قبل ( who - that ) يمكنا ان يأتي بعدهم حرف جر أو آخر الجملة.

✓ This is my friend who I play with.

This is my pen that I write with.

#### tricks)

#### مكي تحاول تقديم وتكتب سب الاحتيار

(which is old)

- Aswan is an amazing city (which where) many tourists visit.
- I like the films (which I watched them I watched) with her.
- He told me (what why) he was absent.
- I told him all (which that) I know.
- The car (repairing repaired was repaired) by the mechanic, is mine.
- Ali (who's whose) clever, always gets high marks.
- I read a book (which in which) the main character was a young boy.





and the same	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	This is the man	flat we are all stay	ing in.	
	(a) who	<b>b</b> whose	© in whose	d in which
2	Mona is the kind of p	erson likes ar	nd dislikes differ from	mine.
	_	<b>b</b> whose		<b>d</b> which
3	What did you do witl	h the money y	our mother lent you?	
		<b>b</b> which		<b>d</b> whose
			e beginning of spring	•
		<b>b</b> which	© who	<b>d</b> whose
6		spoke is a foreigner.		
		<b>b</b> whom		d whose
6	Have you seen	she bought from th	ne book fair?	
		<b>b</b> that		d when
7	The man, th	e car, is called Seif.		
	a that is driving	<b>b</b> driven	© driving	d who driving
8	Many goods	in all over the world	are made in China.	
	(a) which is sold	<b>b</b> which sold	© selling	d sold
9			e. I hope you will forgi	ve me.
		<b>b</b> that	© when	<b>d</b> what
10	Ali is the boy by			
	(a) whose		© whom	d that
		which my son wa	as born.	
44	@ on	<b>b</b> at	© in	d by
12	The woman	the wallet was stolen,	called the police.	
	(a) from who	<b>b</b> whom	c whose	d from whom
<b>UE</b>	Tourists sta	y cost much, moved t		
44	_	<b>b</b> who	© who's	<b>d</b> whom
U		ey no one will		
46	•	<b>b</b> which		<b>d</b> whom
UE	-	he explained		(d)h.mt
Deciman	(a) that	<b>b</b> which	© whose	<b>d</b> what
-	Fill in gap:			
16	The lady, is	sitting in the wheelch	nair, is my grandmoth	er.
17	Uncle Ali earns a foi	rtune,is why	I've asked him to lend	me £1,000.
18	I gave him a drink of	f water,he dr	ank thirstily.	
	_			ake in their bedroom.
			I replied, "It's a secr	
-			Trophica, Teo a coo.	
64	Find the mistake,			
			ad to take extra lesso	
				heerful. []
	•	ols requiring to fix his		[]  own. []
			wn, is to be knocked d	own. [
UC	This is Aya about wh	iose i taiked to you.		[







the Plant and	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
_		car was damaged in		
4	(a) what	<b>b</b> which		d who
6	<u> </u>	some pictures		WIIO
4		<b>b</b> painted		d they were painted
3				a mey were paimed
4	(a) that	t us, was a sh ⑥ it	© what	d which
Λ	_	have unhappy		WIIICH
4	(a) that		© which	d who
G	What's the name of		C WIIICH	WIIO
•	(a) you borrowed his		(h) which car you har	round
	whose car you be	rrowed	<b>b</b> which car you bor <b>d</b> his car you borrow	
6		e car owner t		<b>/eu</b>
4		<b>b</b> where	eaches us English. © in which	d) whose
6	0	witnessed the sum	_	WHOSE
4		which		d in which
Ω	Everyone th	e building, was searc	bod by the police	William William
9	a entering	<b>b</b> entered		d who enter
Q		he meant I do	© enters	who enter
4		he meant i do <b>b</b> which	© to which	(a) by which
40		od in deep fat.		d by which
44		<b>b</b> which fried		d frying
99	The people	next door to me are v	vom noisy	W Irying
uu.		<b>b</b> living		d live
96	I usually do		C are living	d live
UG	which	<b>b</b> when	© what	d) who
46			<u> </u>	WIIO
UE		estion Nasr ob <b>(b) to which</b>		d on which
94	<u> </u>	by Agatha Christie, w	0	d on which
W			c had been written	A ware writing
46				were writing
<b>V</b> C	who sitting	ne last row made too r <b>ⓑ sitting</b>	nuch noise.	d was sitting
er ett.		(b) Silling	WIIO SII	was sining
	Fill in gap:			•
16	The men, with	I lived in London w	ere brave.	
W	Peopleinco	me is low can hardly a	afford the high cost of	fliving.
		which you looked		
			st language is not Ara	ibic.
20	I don't know	called you.	PROTESTABLE SERVICE SE	pas 40
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
21	The house where w	e used to live in was o	old.	[]
			s woman is described	
		in Africa and Europe		
-		hose kind and co-ope		
			ave won gold medals.	
			<del>-</del>	-







Mark 25

Marie a			***************************************	
	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	My mum admired th	e car		
			© which I bought for	d I bought it
2	Ahmed com	e first, is my cousin.		
	@ who	<b>b</b> Who's	© whose	d doesn't
3	The Eastern Desert	, is very dry, h	nas very little wildlife.	
	(a) where	<b>b</b> who	© when	<b>d</b> which
4	Mohamed Salah sco		Egypt to World Cup fin	als.
	@ send	<b>b</b> sent		d is sent
6	Sama home	work was corrected,		
		<b>b</b> whose		d which
6	Egypt is the country	I enjoy living	in.	
		<b>b</b> what		<b>d</b> where
7	Most novels	by Yousef Idrees, are	still read today.	
		<b>b</b> written		d are writing
8	Can you kindly hand	me the file c	over is white.	
	@ who's	(b) whose	© which	<b>d</b> that
9	The chair I v	vas sitting broke dow	n.	
	@ whose	<b>b</b> for which	© on which	<b>d</b> which
10	This is the town in	I spent my child	dhood.	
	@ which	<b>b</b> where	© when	<b>d</b> why
OO			sses his opinion of glo	
	(a) that	<b>b</b> which	© at which	d in which
12	I read an article	expresses the w	riter's opinion of globa	alization.
44			© at which	
13	The company,	my father worked	for, exported goods to	
44		<b>b</b> whose	© where	d that
14	Ali is the best one			
44		<b>b</b> whom		d that
16	It is a clubn	nany important people	e belong.	
	(a) into which	<b>b</b> for which	© when	d to which
	Fill in gap:			
16	This is the smallest	car has ever	been made.	
10	She told me she'd b	een married before,	I didn't realize.	
			rate to Australia, has t	
	_	_	es excellent home-ma	
				-
Dan mark			an always get a table	•
	Find the mistake,			
21	The young man who	awarded the prize is	my brother.	[
22	Mr Ali, that works w	ith us, traveled to Ale	ex.	[
		few months later who		[
		ne woman who baby d		[
26	I told him all who I k	now about the solar s	vstem.	Γ



#### الجملة الخبرية في الغير مباشر

#### **Reported statements**



said – told - promised complain - explainedwarn- admit- threaten مفعول (اسم/ضمير)

يوجد أفعال تحتاج إلى مفعول وأخرى لا تحتاج تستخدم that كرابط ويمكن حذفها

صيغة جملة وماضي (ماعدا حالات عدم تغير الزمن)

باقي الجملة

#### نحويل فعل القول كما يلى:

direct	indirect
say	say
says	says
said	اي فعل لازم - said

direct	indirect
say to	tell
says to	tells
said to	told

🕜 تعذف inverted commas (علامات التنصيص) ويمكن استخدام that أو تعذف.

🕜 تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب كما يلي:

direct I we	indirect
1	he - she
we	they
our	their

dire	ct	indirect
you	ضمير فاعل	he - she - they
you	ضمير مفعول	him - her - them - us
your-my	ملكية	his - her - their - my

#### قائد الأزمنة كما يلى:

direct	indirect	ranga kagapatan 🚾 🥕 😝
play / plays	played	يتحول المضارع البسيط إلى الماضي بسيط
played	had played	يتحول الماضي البسيط إلى الماضي التام
(am / is / are) playing	(was / were) playing	يتحول المضارع المستمر إلى الماضي المستمر
(have / has) played	had played	يتحول المضارع التام إلى الماضي التام
(has / have) been playing	had been playing	يتحول المضارع التام المستمر إلى الماضي التام المستمر
(was / were) playing	had been playing	يتحول الماضي المستمر إلى الماضي التام المستمر
will play	would play	
shall play	should / would play	
may play	might play	الأفعال الناقصة تحول إلى الماضي
can play	could play	
must play	had to play	

#### 6 تتغير أظرف المكان والزمان كما يلي:

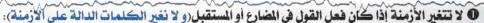
direct	indirect	direct	indirect	direct	indirect
now	then	tomorrow	the next day the following day the day after	last week	the week before the previous week the last week
this	that	yesterday	the day before the previous day the last day	next week	the next week the following week the week after
these	those	ago	before	tonight	that night
here	there	yet	by then	today	that day



√ Toka said to Jana. "I will meet you tomorrow." Toka told Jana that she would meet her the following day.

✓ Ali said to me. "I am preparing a party now." Ali told me he was preparing a party then.

√ Toka said. "I have my breakfast at 7 o' clock." Toka said she had her breakfast at 7 o' clock.



√ Toka says. "I don't believe this story." Toka says she doesn't believe this story.

لا تتفع الأزمنة اذا كانت الحملة تعبر عن حقيقة:

✓ Jana said, "If water freezes, it changes into ice." Jana said that if water freezes, it changes into ice.

لا تتغير الأزمنة إذا كانت الحملة قبلت منذ فترة وحيزة وبدل على ذلك كلمات تأتى بعد فعل القول مثل:

(now / just now / a moment ago / a minute ago / a short time ago / recently)

✓ Mr Ahmed said just now, "I have already done my book." Mr Ahmed said just now he has already done his book.

لا تتفر الأزمنة مع بعض التعبرات مثل:

(would like / would rather / had better / should / would / could / might)

√ Ahmed said, "I'd rather work,"

Ahmed said that he'd rather work.

€ في حالة وجود if يتغير الزمن في الحالة الأولى فقط (لا يتغير في الحالة الثانية والثالثة):

✓ He said, "If you don't get into hospital, you won't get well." He said if I didn't get into hospital, I wouldn't get well.

6 في حالة وجود wish / If only للتعبير عن التمني او الندم:

- ✓ He said." I wish I traveled abroad." He said that he wished he traveled abroad.
  - 6 في حالة وحود used to بمعنى اعتاد على:
- ✓ Seif said to Jana "I used to cry much when I was young." He told Jana that he used to cry much when he was young.

#### السيال في القير معاهد

#### **Reported Questions**

511

توجد نوعان من السؤال (السؤال بفعل مساعد والسؤال باستخدام أداة استفهام) وللتحويل إلى غير مباشر كما يلي:

• تحويل فعل القول كما يلى:

direct	indirect
said to	asked
said	wanted to know / wondered / inquired / asked

② تعذف inverted commas (علامات التنصيص)

🧐 ونستخدم if أو whether في السؤال بالفعل المساعد ونستخدم نفس أداة الاستفهام في السؤال بأداة استفهام.

- ❸ تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والخاطب كما في العملة الخبرية.
  - 4 تتغير الأزمنة كما في الجملة الخبرية.
- 🗗 يتم تعويل صيغة السؤال إلى صيغة جملة خبرية. (لا يوجد صيغة سؤال في الغير مباشر)
  - تحول الظروف الزمنية والمكانية كما في الجملة الخبرية.

√ "Where do you live?" asked Huda. Huda asked me where I lived.











- √ "Why are you laughing?" Sami asked her Sami asked her why she was laughing.
- √ "Who were you talking to yesterday?" asked Heba.

  Heba asked who we had been talking to the day before.
- √ "When will you be back?" asked their father.

  Their father asked them when they would be back.



whether إذا كانت إجابة السؤال Yes / No تستخدم if / whether ونستخدم

فقط اذا وجدت ٥٢.

- ✓ She said to me, "Do you speak English?"

  She asked me if I spoke English.
- ✓ He said, "Have you ever eaten pizza or not?"

  He wondered whether I had ever eaten pizza or not.
- اذا بدأ السؤال بأداة استفهام مثل How / Where / When تستخدم نفس الأداة كاداه ربط:
- √ He said, "Why are you crying?"
- He asked why I was crying.
- € حدَّث الكلمات (do / does / did) عند تعويل السؤال إلى غير مباشر في (does / do) يحول الفعل إلى الماضي البسيط و (did) بتحول الفعل إلى الماضي التام.
  - ✓ Jana said to Toka, "How did you go to the work?" Jana asked Toka how she had gone to the work.
  - ✓ Jana said to Toka, "When does she watch TV?" Jana asked Toka when she watched TV.
    - لا تتغير الأزمنة في بعض التحويلات كما في الجملة الخبرية:
  - ✓ Toka asks Adam, "What will you do?" Toka asks Adam what he will do.
  - ✓ Mr Ahmed asked just now, "Where is the club?" Mr Ahmed asked just now where the club is.

الهملة الامرية والالتاراح

Reported imperatives, suggestions and advice

الجملة الأمرية

هي جملة التي تبدأ بفعل في المصدر في الإثبات مثل "Open this door." أو بـ don't waste your time." في حالة النفي مثل

🗐 وللتحويل إلى كلام غير مباشر كما يلي:

🛈 تحويل فعل القول كما يلي:

direct indirect
said to complained - warned - ordered - asked - told - advised

🗨 تعذف inverted commas (علامات التنصيص) ونستخدم:

في الأمر المثبت نستخدم (المصدر + to)

- ✓ Ali said to his son "study hard."
- √ Ali advised (told asked) his son to study hard.

في الأمر المنفي نستخدم (الصدر + not to)

- ✓ Seif said to Jana "Don't make noise."
- √ Seif advised (told) Jana not to make noise.
  - تتحول الضمائر حسب المتكلم والمخاطب كما في الجملة الخبرية:
    - تتغير الأزمنة كما في الجملة الخبرية.
    - 6 تتغير أظرف المكان والزمان كما في الجملة الخبرية.



## استَّكْمَامُ الْأَمْعَالُ فِي الْغَبِرِ مِبَاشِرِ

في حالة التمني (wish)

في حالة اللتهام

(accuse)

(recommend)

في حالة الوعد

(promise)

wish ..... to + inf. Or noun

✓ He said to me, "Have a nice holiday."

She wished me a nice holiday.

accuse ...... of + V + ing

✓ Nada said to Aya, "You stole my wallet."

⇒ Nada accused Aya of stealing her wallet.

في حالة الاقتراح (suggest) في حالة التوصية

suggest / recommend + v +ing should + inf. ( فاعل + inf.) + should + inf. ( فاعل + inf.)

✓ He said, "Let's sing" = He suggested singing.

He suggested that they should sing.

حملة + promised that + حملة

✓ His father said, "If you get high marks, I'll buy you a bike.

This father promised to buy him a bike if he got high marks.

advise someone to / not to + inf.

في حالة النصيحة (advise)

(admit)

في حالة الرفض

(refuse)

في حالة الإنكار

(deny)

(apologise)

✓ He said to me, "You'd better sleep early."

The advised me to sleep early.

النصيحة) تحول كالأتي : ﴿ اللَّهُ اللّلْمُ اللَّهُ اللَّا اللَّهُ اللَّاللَّا اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ الللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ اللَّهُ

✓ He said, "If I were you, I would study hard."

The advised me to study hard.

admit + v + ing / admit that حملة

في حالة الاعتراف ✓ She said, "I did this crime."

She admitted doing that crime.

agree to + inf. / agree that + جملة في حالة الموافقة √ He said to me, "yes, I will go with you." (agree)

He agreed to go with me.

refuse to + inf. / refuse that + عملة

✓ She said to me, "No, I won't go with you."

She refused to go with me.

deny + v +ing / deny that جملة

✓ The thief said, "I didn't rob the house."

The thief denied robbing the house.

The thief denied that he had robbed the house.

apologize for + V + ing في حالة اللعتذار

> √ He said, "I'm sorry I didn't attend your wedding party." He apologised for not attending my wedding party.



#### Ciants' Gramma

في حالة العرض (offer)

حملة + offer that offer to + inf.

√ He said, "Shall I help you to cross the road?" ⇒ He offered to help me cross the road.

ask ..... to + inf.

في حالة الطلب (request)

✓ She said, "Could you lend me your dictionary, please?" ⇒ She asked me to lend her my dictionary.

invite ..... to + inf.

في حالة الدعوة (invitation)

✓ He said, "Would you like to come to my birthday party?" The invited me to his birthday party.

blame ..... for + V + ing

في حالة اللوم (blame)

√ He said, "Why didn't you study hard?" ⇒ He blamed me for not studying hard.

decide to + inf.

في حالة القرار (decide)

✓ He said, "I've made up my mind to give up smoking" ⇒ He decided to give up smoking.

> warn someone not to + inf. warn someone against + V + ing

في حالة التحذير (warn)

✓ He said to me, "Don't cross the road." The warned me not to cross the road. The warned me against crossing the road.

insist on + V + ing

في حالة الاصرار (insist)

√ He said, "I will leave now." ⇒ He insisted on leaving then.

#### Wed تحويلاك must

تحول must إلى had to في الماضي.

✓ He said, "I must study hard."

He said that he had to study hard.

🗐 تحول must إلى would have to في المستقبل.

✓ He said, "I must come tomorrow."

⇒ He said that he would have to come tomorrow.

🗐 لا تتحول **must** إذا كانت تدل على وجوب دائم.

✓ She said, "We must obey our parents."

She said that they must obey their parents.

must have + P.P إذا كانت تدل على استنتاج الي must have 🗐

✓ He said to me, "Ali must be ill."

He told me that Ali must have been ill.



#### هذا الجزاء يساعدك على الحل

لاحظ تحول بعض ظروف الزمان والمكان وما يأتى معهم كما يلى:

Direct	Reported	لد وجود تلك الكلمات لابد أن تحتوي الجملة على	
now	then		
at this moment	at that moment	was, were + inf. + ing	
ago	before		
yesterday	the day before / the last day / the previous day	had + P.P	
last week "month - year"	the week before / the last week / the previous week		
tomorrow	the day after / the next day / the following day	would + inf. مصدر	
next week "month - year"	the week after / the next week / the following week	was / were + going to +inf. was / were + inf. +ing	
tonight	that night		
today	that day	L. J. D.D.	
yet	by then	had + P.P	
for / since	for / since		

- ✓ Toka said that she was preparing for her birthday party then.
- ✓ Jana told me that she had been to Luxor the week before.
- ✓ Ahmed said that he would buy that nice jacket the following week.

❷ لاحظ أن الكلام الغير مباشر دائماً يكون في صيغة الجملة وزمن الماضي (ماعدا حالات عدم تغير الزمن):

Jana told Toka that ..... bought a new dress.

a has she

**b** she has

(c) had she

d) she had

خطأ (صيغة سؤال ومضارع)

خطأ (مضارع)

خطأ (صيغة سؤال)

صحيحة (ماضي وجملة)

Jana asked Toka where ..... bought this dress.

a has she

**(b)** she has

(c) had she

d she had

خطأ (صيغة سؤال ومضارع)

خطأ (مضارع)

خطأ (صيغة سؤال)

صحيحه (ماضي وجمده)

€ إذا جاءت أداة الاستفهام بعد صيغ الطلب تعامل كجملة وليست سؤال مثل:

- ✓ Can you tell me where the club is?
- ✓ Do you know where Toka went?

بعض افعال القول لا يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير (مخاطب) مثل:

said / admitted / reported / answered / explained / complained / replied wanted to know / wondered / inquired

- ✓ Hani wanted to know if he could go.
- ✓ Mona inquired where the book was.
- √ Hani sqid that he came late.

🗐 للحظ أن بعض أفعال القول لابد أن يأتي بعدها اسم أو ضمير (مخاطب) مثل:

told / persuaded / convinced / warned / reminded

✓ Seif told Aya that she was lazy.



**Wise Saying** 

Sometimes you win, sometimes you learn.

أحياناً تربح .. وأحياناً تتعلم





****	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	<del></del>		
	Ahmed promised that he late once more.					
			© can't be	d won't be		
2		e feed the bird				
	(a) has to	<b>b</b> have to	© must	d had to		
3	Salah said that his fa	avourite subject	history.			
	@ was	<b>b</b> were she had a headache.	© has been	d will be		
4	Omnia that	she had a headache.				
	@ complained	<b>b</b> told	© asked	<b>d</b> warned		
E		her room ever				
_		<b>b</b> is cleaning		d cleans		
6		rive me into the city c				
4	(a) said	<b>b</b> threatened	© ordered	d agreed		
V		me his mobile.				
	(a) to lend	<b>b</b> to lending	© lending	<b>d</b> lend		
8	A back injury	her to withdraw fro	m the race.			
4	(a) forced	<b>b</b> suggested	© expected	<b>d</b> invited		
Ų			ts were absent			
44			© this day	a) the day before		
UU		her there befo				
44			© had I been	@ I go		
UU	Samy's mother aske	ed him where	. Oho has been	(A) has be been		
46			© he has been	o nas ne been		
UZ	I suggested that he	wait for us til	we return.	<b>d</b> shall		
46	(a) WIII	<b>b</b> can	en rebbed the			
US	She told the police	nat her purse had be	en robbed the © day before	(d) next day		
44				W HEAT day		
UU	O demanded	shopping at the new I	© promised	<b>d</b> suggested		
46	Ava denied	the car window	C promised			
UC	Aya deflied	h brook	© to breaking	(d) to break		
pro-ch	o breaking	D break	C To breaking	@ 10 break		
	Fill in gap:					
		play football that				
17	Aya me what	at I would buy for her	as a present.			
18	I asked him what he	e been doing t	he day before.			
16	"Let's go to the bea	ch", he said. He sugg	jested to the k	peach.		
20	Nada saids	she ate too many swe	ets.			
	Find the mistake,	1 222 % % 93973				
			andria the week before	e. [		
			andria trie week belor			
	Ali asked Yasser wl			[		
26	Ali wanted to know	if I was ready for the	interview or not.	[		
20	He asked where his	s mother was. "Where	e was my mother?" he	asked. [		
26	Rami wanted to kno	ow where Mona has b	een.	[		

128





				and the same of th
	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	The farmers said tha	at they moder		
	(a) used	<b>b</b> were using	© was using	d had used
2	The teacher	the pupils to do the ho	omework.	
_	(a) threatened	<b>b</b> offered	© promised	<b>d</b> reminded
3	Ahmed tells me that	he to stop sn	noking.	
_		<b>b</b> had wanted		<b>d</b> wants
4			ar next month as plant	
_	@ would buy	<b>b</b> will buy	© is going to buy	d buys
6	The mechanic told t	he driver that he	his car the previou	ıs week.
			© had repaired	d was repairing
6		him that rude		
_			© he had had	
7			. He to me for	
_			© admitted	<b>d</b> promised
8	Ahmed Ali h	ad never been to Asv	van.	
_			© asked	
9			same performance tl	ne next day.
	(a) told	<b>b</b> inquired	© said	<b>d</b> wondered
10	The social studies to	eacher told us that As	siathe largest co	ntinent in the world.
	@ was	<b>(b)</b> is	© has been	d will be
U			ıdents were all late.	
44	@ demanded	<b>b</b> ignored	© discouraged	<b>d</b> silenced
12			a perfect essay	
44	I could write	<b>b</b> could I write	© could write	d can you write
<b>UE</b>		. the students to work		
44		<b>b</b> encouraged		d said
			riend's wedding tonig	
44			© had gone	d would go
15		me as soon as he re		
	phoning	<b>b</b> phone	© to phoning	d to phone
	Fill in gap:			
16	Nader suggested	a film on TV tor	night.	
		e was living with her f		
-		liked the book or not		
		. us that today's lesso		
<b>U</b>	"I've made a mistak	e.", he said. he admiti	ted hea mista	ike.
7	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
20	Huda told me that sl	ne had travelled to Pa	ris the next week.	ſ
		as the person I had be		[
	He asked me where		w	[
			naiaanaua	-
		pesticides could be p		[
25	The teacher said the	at the earth orbited th	e sun.	





and makedy	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r di			
		he said. He assured		(A) did		
6	He advised us to but	rry. "You hurr	© would do	a) did		
4				A house botton		
2	She admitted having	stolon the purse " l	© better the purse.", s	ho soid		
•	(a) steal		© would steal			
4	He told her to bring	it the port day "Bring	it	to hor		
-	the post day	(b) another day	© tomorrow	d the following day		
			stand to attention.", he			
4			© they ordered			
6		ne had taken my walle	_	d ordered mem		
4			© begged	(d) offered		
9	I know that a now so	condary school	in our village rece	ntly		
			© had been built			
			intil he had finished th			
			© hasn't			
9	He said he h	is grandmother in ho	spital the week before			
			© had visited			
10			chanic when her car			
-			© had to			
11	Can you tell me	now?	C ilda io	W Have to		
-			©what time is	d) what time was it		
12			the top of the Cairo To			
			© the cost will			
16	Lasked Ahmed	broke the window	N.			
	@ if		© why	d who		
	She me if I		<b></b>	<b>9</b>		
•		(b) wandered	© asked	<b>d</b> inquired		
16		te and if I had missed				
		<b>b</b> wondered why		d told me		
	Fill in gap:					
		nat London is the bigg	eest city in England			
		I could tell her how				
			new film about space	the week.		
		oms the sma				
20	Our teacher says th	at he ready to	help all the pupils.			
A marks	Find the mistake,	then correct it:				
21	They wanted to know	w if did I play music.		[]		
		vhy I had chosen that	T-shirt	[ ]		
	Mother asked me tic	_	offit.	[] []		
			" Ali andanad ···a t- ··			
				ead that book. [		
45	Aisha's parents asked her unless she had finished her homework.					





ark u puā

				· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·
	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	1
		for the next		
			© we waited	d don't waiting
2				t upon his suggestion.
			© didn't you	
3		the people not to		
			© instructed	(d) said
4			d we park the	
			© shouldn't	
6			e job as it's not rewar	
	a to apply	<b>b</b> not to apply	© don't apply	d apply
6	I suggested that Ali	to the club w	ith us.	
	@ went	<b>b</b> to go	© go	<b>d</b> going
7	I asked the tourist	he comes fron	n.	
			© where	
8	Ahmed said that he	would buy ni	ce jacket the following	g week.
	(a) these	<b>b</b> those	© that	d this
9	The criminal	. that he killed his nei	ghbour deliberately.	
	@ promised	<b>b</b> suggested	© threatened	<b>d</b> admitted
10	I that Ahmed	go by his car.		
	@ promised	<b>b</b> said	© told	<b>d</b> suggested
10	I asked just now what			
			© is the time	
12	She told me that I	due care to my	work. I actually appr	eciate her advice.
	a needn't have given		<b>b</b> could have given	
	© should have given		d should give	
16	They suggested they	y come with me. "	with you.", they s	
			© We'll go	d Let's go
14		k early. "I bad		
44			© am to be	
(E	She wanted to know	where he was. "Whe	ere?", she der	nanded.
	@ was he	<b>b</b> he was	© would he be	d is he
	Fill in gap:			
16	My mother warned n	ne touch the	plate because it was	verv hot.
17	"I never do that.".he	said. He said that he	never that.	
		come the follow		
		e if I had done my bes		
	She me how		,	
	Find the mistake, t	hen correct it:	e t / Augusta	
		would visit us as soo	n as nassibla	
		had a driving licence		[]
		nad a driving licence er if our exam papers		
		er ir our exam papers I a lie when she was 1		[]
		the soldiers to fire at		[] [ 1



#### حالات ۱۱

#### If Conditionals



Zero conditional

# Present simple >>>> (v:v+s)

Present simple

>>>>

(من المضارع البسيط (v: v + s)

- 🗐 تستخدم للتعبير عن حقائق علمية عامة وللتعبير عن عادات ثابتة لا تتغير ولا ترتبط بتوقيت معين:
- ✓ If you heat ice, it melts.
- ✓ If we mix white and red, we get pink.
  - 🗿 للبد أن تكون الحقيقة عامه وليست خاصة وإذا كانت الحقيقة خاصة تستخدم الحالة الأولى كما يلي:
    - استخدام صفة إشارة (those / these / that / this) قبل الفاعل أو المفعول.
    - استخدام صفة ملكية (....'s...) My / his / her / its / your / our / their / .... 's...
      - ❸ ارتباط حدوت الفعل بمكان محدد أو بتوقيت محدد أو ما يدل علي ذلك.

لاحظ الفرق

- √ If I use the computer for so long, I always get tired.
- ✓ If I use the computer for so long today, I will get tired.
  - 🗐 المثال الأول عادة عامة طوال حياتي لكن المثال الثاني وصف لموقف محدد.
- ✓ If we boil water, it steams.

(عامة)

✓ If we boil thin water, it will steam.

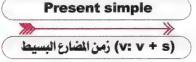
(موقف خاص)

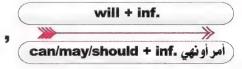
√ If we boil water in this pot, it will steam.

(خاص)



First conditional





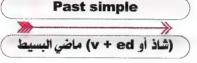
- 🗐 تستخدم للتعبير عن إمكانية حقيقية لحدوث شيء في المستقبل تتوفر شروط حدوثه.
- ✓ If you study hard, you will succeed.
- ✓ If we go by bus, it will be cheaper.
  - 🗐 يمكننا استخدام الأمر أو النهى أو الطلب في جملة جواب الشرط
- ✓ If Jana calls, tell her I am here.
  - 🗐 يمكننا استخدام (may) في جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن الاحتمال أو (can) للتعبير عن المقدرة
- √ If Jana studies well, she can get a high mark.
- √ If Seif looks at me carefully, he may recognise me.
  مكننا استخدام (should) في جملة جواب الشرط للتعبير عن النصيحة أو (should) للتعبير عن الإلزام
- ✓ If you ask me, you should see a doctor.
- ✓ If Seif comes late, he has to apologise.

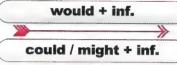




Second conditional

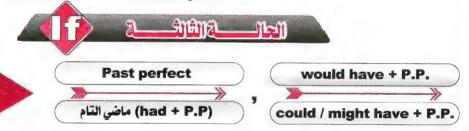
Third conditional





📋 تعبر الحالة الثانية عن موقف غير محتمل أو شيء تخيلي في المضارع.

- √ What would you do if you were bitten by a snake?
- √ Who would you ask if you needed help?
- √ If I knew his number, I would phone him.
- √ If I was / were a bird, I could fly.
- √ If I studied hard, I would pass.
- √ If I was / were rich, I would build a palace.
- ✓ If we went by bus, it would be cheaper.
- √ What would you do if you won a lot of money?
- ✓ If there was (or were) an election tomorrow, who would you vote for?
- √ If it stopped raining, we could go out. (= we would be able to go out)
  - 🧻 تستخدم الحالة الثانية لطلب أو أعطاء نصيحة.
- ✓ If I were you, I wouldn't waste my time.
- √ If you were in my position, what would you do?



🗐 للتعبير عن استحالة الحدوث وتستخدم للانتقاد أو الندم:

- √ If you had gone to the sports club, you would / could / might have seen Ali.
- ✓ If Toka had left earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train.
- ✓ If I'd known you were in hospital, I would have gone to see you.
- ✓ I didn't go out last night. I would have gone out if I hadn't been so tired.
- ✓ If he had been looking where he was going, he wouldn't have walked into the wall.
- √ The view was wonderful. If I'd had a camera with me, I would have taken
  pictures.

#### Compare

- ✓ I'm not hungry. If I was hungry, I would eat something. (now)
- √ I wasn't hungry. If I had been hungry, I would have eaten something. (past)

#### Compare

#### would have, could have and might have:

- ✓ If the weather hadn't been so bad, we would (could) have gone out.
- (= we would have been able to go out)
  ✓ If the weather hadn't been so bad, we might have gone out.

(= perhaps we would have gone out)



#### خدبالك

- ◘ يتم حل جمل الاختياري عن طريق النظر إلى الجملة الكاملة سواء كانت جملة فعـل الشـرط أو جملـة جـواب الشـرط ثـم تحديـد
   الحالة من الجملة الكامل كما بلي:
- ✓ If she..... up early, she would catch the train.
- الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة جواب الشرط وبهــا .inf + أwould شي تعبــر عــن الحالــة الثانيــة أي اللختيــاري الصــحيح المرابق المرابق الشرط وبهـــا .
- ✓ If she had read quickly, she ...... the competition.
- الجملة الكاملة هنا جملة فعل الشرط وبها .had + P.P هي الحالـة الثالثـة أي اللختيــاري الصــحيح ســوف يكــون (would have + P.P.
  - و لاحظ كلمة had فقط تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أما .had + P.P تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة.
  - و لاحظ كلمة would have فقط تعبر عن الحالة الثانية أما .would have + P.P تعبر عن الحالة الثالثة.

We do not normally use would in the if-part of the sentence:

- ✓ I'd be scared if somebody pointed a gun at me. (NOT if somebody would point)
- √ If we went by bus, it would be cheaper. (NOT if we would go)

But you can use if ... would when you ask somebody to do something:

✓ I would be grateful if you would let me know your decision as soon as possible.



نستغدم بدلا من (If) (Should+.....+ inf.) كالتالي:

حذف if الحالة اللولي --

- If Toka studies hard, she will succeed.
  - = Should Toka study hard, she will succeed.

#### حذف if الحالة الثانية - نستخدم بدلا من (lf)

- 🕻 وإذا كانت (were) فعل أساسي في الجملة تأتي مكان (if) وتكون بمعني لو كنت:
- ✓ If I were you, I'd help poor people. = were I you, I'd help poor people.
  - 🕡 وإذا كانت (had) فعل أساسي في الجملة تأتي مكان (if) وتكون بمعني لو امتلك :
- √ If I had much money, I'd buy a car. = Had I much money, I'd buy a car.
  - 🗗 وإذا وجد فعل أساسي غير (were) تأتي .Should + subject.+ inf مكان (if):
- √ If Toka studied hard, she'd succeed.
  - =Should Toka study hard, she'd succeed.
    - 3 وإذا وجد فعل أساسي غير (were were + subject + to + inf. تأتي .were مكان (if) :
- √ If Toka studied hard, she'd succeed.
  - =were Toka to study hard, she'd succeed.

#### نستخدم بدلا من (Had + subject + P.P) (If) كالتالي:

حذف **if** الحالة الثالثة

✓ If Toka had left earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train.
= Had Toka left earlier, she wouldn't have missed the train.







If = in case = providing (that) = provided (that) = as long as = on condition that = supposing (that) = imagine (that)



- √ You can borrow my pen if / provided that / on condition that / as long as you
  give it back.
- ✓ In case Toka left earlier, she wouldn't miss the train.
- ✓ Supposing / Imagine (that) you found a job in Cairo, what would you do?

#### in case

- ✓ I'll leave my mobile phone switched on in case Jane calls.
- ✓ I'll draw a map for you in case you have problems finding our house.
- ✓ I'll remind them about the meeting in case they've forgotten.
- √ I'll give you my phone number in case you need to contact me.
- √ You should insure your bike in case it is stolen.



نى حالة | If (there is) = In case of = With = By + noun / v + ing



- ✓ In case of emergency, call 122.
- ✓ In case of fire, please leave the building as quickly as possible. (= if there is a fire)
- ✓ In case of emergency, call this number. (= if there is an emergency)



unless = except if = If .....not...(جملة)

unless = without / but for / If it weren't for + noun / Inf. ing اذا لم لولم

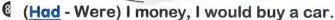
- √ If they didn't have a ticket, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ✓ Unless they had a ticket, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ✓ Without having a ticket, they wouldn't be able to watch the match.
- ✓ If Toka didn't leave earlier, she would miss the train.
- ✓ Unless Toka left earlier, she would miss the train.
- ✓ Without / But for leaving earlier, Toka would miss the train.

خدبسالك

lf it were not for + inf. + ing / n.. → subj. + Would + inf. ... ושוג וניונג וובוג וניונג וניונג וניונג וויינג וויינגנג וויינג וויינג

#### If tricks

ممكن تجاول تفهم وتكتب سبب الاختيار



(Had - Were) I a bird, I could fly.

(Had - Were) I wings, I could fly.

(Should - Were) he study hard, he would pass the exam.

(Should - Were) I to study hard, I get full marks.

(Should - Were) you meet Ali, tell him your good news.

(If - Had) I been stupid, I wouldn't have solved that problem.

(If - Had) I read the book, I would have explained it.

If the money I had, (had - had had - had been) enough, I would have bought a car.

If he read the book, (will - would) he understand it?





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:				
1	If it rains tomorrow	, weat home.					
	@ will stay	<b>b</b> stayed	© stay	d might stay			
2	_	boil your food, it w	on't lose vitamins.				
		<b>b</b> won't		d haven't			
3	You earn m	nore if you spoke Fren	ich.				
	@ will	<b>b</b> would		<b>d</b> should			
4	Iit very muc	ch if they gave the job	to Ali.				
	@ don't like	<b>b</b> didn't like	© won't like	d wouldn't like			
•	I his address, I could visit her.						
	@ Had	<b>b</b> If	© Should	<b>d</b> Were			
6	If the money I had,	enough, I'd h	ave bought a new hou	se.			
	(a) had	<b>b</b> had been	© been	d were			
7	If he arrived early,	catch the met	ro?				
	he would	<b>b</b> would he	© he will	d will he			
8	his assistan	ce, I might have lost r	ny job				
	@ Without	<b>b</b> If	© Unless	<b>@</b> Should			
9	that you liv	ed by the sea, what w	ould you do every day	/?			
	@ Condition	<b>b</b> As long	© Imagine	<b>d</b> Supposed			
10	Only call us	an emergency.					
	(a) in case	<b>b</b> in case of	© if	d as long as			
00	she arrive	early, I would help he	r.				
	@ If		© were	<b>d</b> Unless			
12	If I could, I	to Madrid.					
		<b>b</b> would go		d must			
18	What happ	en if you didn't go to t					
	@ will	<b>b</b> must	© may	d would			
14	you go to the	he cinema if you had ı					
	@ Will		© Would	<b>d</b> Should			
		very angry if I lost the					
	@ would be	<b>b</b> should be	© would to be	d won't be			
	Fill in gap:		And the state of t				
16	What happ	ened if he had refuse	d to come to the party	?			
	• •	if I in trouble					
	•	lo If you got lost in a b					
	_	_		thoro			
	_		ke seven hours to get				
20	If you study all nigh	t, you be exh	austed at the time of t	ne test.			
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:					
21	I will tell you all abo	out it if you had the tim	ne.	[]			
22	I would have close	d the window if it'd ha	d cold.	[]			
23		t Hassan if I stayed at		[]			
		I can stop the fight.		[]			
-			o compine				
यर	ir the weather was t	i <mark>ne tomorrow, we'll</mark> ge	o camping.	[]			

136





			and the same of th
	Choose the correct answer fron	n a, b, c or d:	~ 1
1	If you have enough time, I	rather have lunch together	
	@ would	© can	d would have
9	She wouldn't mind if I, wo		0
_	(a) hadn't gone (b) didn't go	© wouldn't go	d don't go
8	If Tokaus to the wedding, v	we should buy her a present.	
	(a) will invite (b) invites	© invited	<b>d</b> would invite
4	If autumn starts, treestheir	leaves.	
4	(a) losing (b) will lose		d would lose
E	If Egypta lot of rain, it migh	nt have a lot more trees.	
4	(a) had (b) had had	© will have	d was having
6	If you want to come first, it		fforts.
4	(a) is (b) was		@ will
9	he played well, he woul		
6		© Had	<b>d</b> Were
8	If he thirsty, he would h	ave drunk some water.	
a	(a) had had (b) had been		<b>d</b> had
9	If the books hadn't been so expe		_
99	would buy     would have		<b>d</b> had bought
<b>1</b> 0	I your teacher, I would f		
aa	Were	© Had	<b>d</b> Should
ŲŲ	Youbetter if you take this m		
99	(a) felt (b) will feel		d would feel
UČ	Iron if you leave it in the op		
16	(a) rust (b) will rust	© rusts	d would rust
UE	they run out of tickets,	we will have to go to another o	
aa	Were	© Had	<b>@ Will</b>
UG	he to help us, we would	be saved.	<b>O</b> • • • •
16	(a) If (b) were	© had	d should
	emergency, call this nu		<b>(1)</b> = 1.1
	(a) If (b) In case	© In case of	<b>d</b> But for
	Fill in gap:		
16	I would have that mobile if I	enough money.	
17	If metal is heated, it		
18	If I was taller, I play bas	ketball.	
19	If you mix red and green paint, y		
	If I mistaken, I will apolo		
	THE REPORT OF THE RESERVE AND A STATE OF THE RES	5 1 1 1 4 4 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	· · · · · ·
54	Find the mistake, then correct i	Li	
	If ice is heated, it melt.		
22	If water freezes, it will turn into	ice.	[
23	Unless you were in China, what	food would you eat?	
24	Am I a movie star, I could get an	y table in the fanciest restaur	ant. [
25	Were he a proper plan, he would	dn't waste his time.	





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
1	What if your passpo	rt? - Surely,	I'd inform the police.	
	(a) had stolen			d was stolen
2	well, he we	ould have gone out fo		
	Were he	<b>b</b> Were he to feel		d Had he been
3	If you more ca	reful, you would have	e minimized your mista	
	a had been	<b>b</b> were	© had	d had had
4	If the problem	well, we would have	reached a reasonable	e solution.
			© had discussed @ ha	d been discussed
€		ance if there an	_	<b>(1)</b>
	@ was	<b>b</b> is	© were	d will be
		visit you; really I		
	@ weren't	<b>b</b> were		d am not
•	_	b, if I have time. I hav		(A) house to
-	@ would	<b>b</b> may	© should	d have to
8	aste the soup and	add salt if	(a) III ha maaaaaa	d is necessary
			© 'll be necessary	
		(b) will be	to read about the terri	d were
	(a) is	0	if I had had enough mo	
		noney I had eno		mey at nome.
	(a) was	<b>b</b> wasn't	© had been	d hadn't been
66	•	n the garden, In	•	
	(a) had	<b>b</b> have	© has	d will have
12	0	,exciting, I would	•	
	a had had	<b>b</b> had been		<b>d</b> had
16			ldn't have broken her	leg.
	@ If	<b>b</b> Were	© Had	<b>d</b> Should
14	water, all p	people would die.		
	(a) In case of		© If	d Even if
16	I don't know what.	do if I failed n	ny exam.	
	(a) I will	<b>b</b> will I	© would I	d I would
Anton Street	Fill in gap:			
16	that you w	in the lottery, what w	vill you do?	
		leave now if she wan		
		uldn't tell anyone abo		
		ving licencey		
20	I had spare	e time, I'd have read i	nore books.	
and the same	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
21	1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	uldn't have been able	e to survive	[
		company, I would ach		[
23		w, he would know the		[
24	unless our savings	s, we wouldn't have b	een able to make the	payments. [
26	Had I been a millio	naire, I would not ha	ve to worry about spe	nding money. [









- ✓ We didn't enjoy the day because the weather was cold.
  - = We didn't enjoy the day because of the cold weather.
- ✓ She loses her tools as she is careless.
  - = Due to her carelessness, she loses her tools.
    - بدلاً من جملة because يمكن أن تبدأ الجملة بـ Being وبعدها الصفة ثم باقي الجملة
- √ He was absent because he was ill. = Being ill, he was absent.

جملة + is / was that غيلة + The reason

- √ He was absent because he was ill.
  - = The reason he was absent was that he was ill.



Linking Words showing result

بالثاني consequently / لذلك that's why / therefore / لذلك thus / for this reason / as a result

- He was ill so he was absent.
- ✓ Jana didn't study well; therefore she didn't pass her exams.
- √ It was raining, that's why we didn't go out.
- ✓ He didn't arrive early; as a result he missed the bus.





Linking Words showing contrast



- أ يأتوا في بداية الجملة أو بين الجملتين (بينهم تناقض)
- ✓ Although he is 70, he is energetic.
- ✓ Even though he is rich, he isn't happy.
- ترتيب الجمل مع although / though / even though حيث أن الحدث الغير متوقع يأتي في الجملة الثانية .
  - أحيانا تستخدم while بمعنى although:
  - ✓ While there was no evidence, they thought she committed this crime.



من الرغم من + n. / -ing / adj.+ n.

✓ Despite being 70, he is energetic.

√ He isn't happy in spite of being rich.

In spite of the fact that

Despite the fact that



- ✓ In spite of the fact that He is 70. He is energetic.
- ✓ Despite the fact that he is rich, he isn't happy.

but / however / yet

- √ He is 70 but / , however / , yet he is energetic.
- √ He is rich but / , however he isn't happy.



أنه إذا بدأت الجملة بـ However يأتي بعدها الصفة أو الحال ثم الفاعل و الفعل

- √ However rich he is, he isn't happy.
- √ However hard he studied, he got low marks.





#### **Giants' Grammar** عدا + فاعل + as + فاعل + فعال ا √ Rich as he is, he isn't happy. ✓ Hard as he studied, he got low marks. فعل + فاعل + اسم Whatever √ Whatever wealth he has, he isn't happy. √ Whatever hardships he faced, he could win. Linking Words showing Purpose to / so as to / in order to +inf. لکر √ Toka goes to school to learn. ✓ Jana studies hard in order to join an engineering faculty. in the hope of +v + inq✓ Toka goes to school in the hope of learning. √ Jana studies hard in the hope of joining an engineering faculty. so that / in order to that / in the hope that vIII - may - c in order to that would - might - cou ✓ He studies hard so that he can get full marks. √ He studied hard so that he could get full marks. **Linking Words showing Time** إلى سبق دُراستهم في الازمنة past continuous past simpl While nast simple past continuous V + Ing عدم وجود فاعل ✓ While Seif was studying, his father came. ✓ While studying, Seif 's father came. ✓ While Seif was studying, his mother was cooking. √ While I was on holiday, my house was robbed. يُستخدم الماضي البسيط بعد while إذا كان الفعل to be √ After Seif had studied, he slept. √ After studying, Seif slept. √ Having studied, Seif slept. past simple Before past Perfe عدم وجود فاعل ✓ Before Seif slept, he had studied. √ Before sleeping, Seif had studied. When + ناعل + On + V + ing. √ When he finished his study, he got a job as a teacher. ✓ On finishing his study, he got a job as a teacher. اسم + During ✓ During the party, he received a lot of presents. ونظل طرسى أناغة الأنطيارة 141



# Elementary Exercises Mark

and para	Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
	I had to study arou	nd the clock pa	ss my exams.	
		<b>b</b> in order to		d so that
2		eather, the match was p		
		<b>b</b> Despite		
3		ired today I we		
	o because	<b>b</b> however	© although	d so
4	studying h	ard, we got low marks.		0
		<b>b</b> However		d Whatever
€		iceman, the thief ran aw		
_	(a) to see	<b>b</b> seeing	© he saw	<del>-</del>
6		on be sure that		
_		<b>b</b> as to		d so that
4	graduating	g, he became a journalis	st.	0.4
		<b>(b)</b> Although		d In spite of
8	being very	tired, I continued work	ing.	0 - "
	@ Even though	<b>b</b> Therefore	© As well	<b>d</b> Despite
9		I his family but he	missed his old fr	ends.
	@ or	<b>b</b> also		d as well
	he got a go	ood job, he was not hap	py.	0.5.11
		<b>(b)</b> Although		<b>d</b> Besides
Q	he was at	Oxford, he wrote a few	ooems.	
	@ While	<b>(b)</b> Although	© Despite	d in spite of
Q	hearing th	e good news, everyone	smiled and clapped	d.
	@ On	<b>b</b> When	© Because	<b>d</b> So
Q	the boys h	ad played football, they	had a shower.	O Althorough
44	@ While	<b>b</b> Because	© After	
	He was very unha	opy at school he	was regularly bull	led.
44		<b>b</b> although		d so
(H		tter talking with	her advisor.	(A) :4
	@ after	<b>b</b> because	(C) DUT	<b>d</b> if
	> Fill in gap:			
0	really enjo	oying the book you lent	me, I haven't finishe	ed it yet.
		red, she worked overtin		
_	_	a now lives in E		
_	you say, I			
		bed, Jana did his Englis	h homework	
G		•	II HOINEWOLK.	
	Find the mistake	and the second second second		1
		nomework, Seif watched		[
		e studies, she doesn't ge	et full marks.	<u></u>
	Beside being clev			[
		d friends, we don't mee		[
2	However I studied	hard, my grades were	not good.	





Service A				
	Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1	You won't pass the	exam you worl	k harder.	.,
_	(a) if	<b>b</b> although		d) unless
2	writing his o	wn novels, he translated	d French and Italian	literature into Arabic
	As well as	<b>b</b> Because of	© In addition	d In spite of
3	his old age	, my uncle is very energ	getic.	@ <b>-p</b> o.
	@ Although	<b>b</b> Despite	© Because of	d In spite
4	being depr	essed, he's having trou	ible in schoot.	O p
	In addition	<b>b</b> Besides	© Beside	d Despite
6	He found it difficult	to concentrate	his worry about his	s grades.
	@ because	(b) as	© due to	d) since
6	going to be	ed last night, I read a ch	apter of a book.	
	@ But		© Before	d) After
7	it rarely rai	ns in Egypt, some touri	sts bring umbrellas	with them.
	@ But	<b>b</b> So	© Although	d However
8	they saw th	ne road accident, the ca	ars drove more slow	vlv.
_	<b>©</b> 50	<b>b</b> Because	© When	<b>@</b> Although
9	After the re	eports, she saw a film.		<b>3</b>
	(a) typed	<b>b</b> had typed	© types	<b>d</b> typing
10	He was depressed,	he went to see	his advisor.	© 1/p5
	a as	(b) but	© because	d so
QQ	I stayed in my room	I was tired of s	peaking English all	the time.
	(d) SO	<b>b</b> because	© but	d due to
12	It is my mother's bir	rthday soon, I w	ant to buy her a pro	esent.
	(a) so	<b>b</b> but	© because	d however
18	Mohamed studies h	ard, he isn't ge	tting good grades.	
	(a) but	(b) because	@ desnite	(d) whon
14	There's no airport in	n the city, there	s's one about fifty m	iles away.
	(a) However	<b>(b)</b> even though	(c) however	<b>d</b> besides
15	While Al Daifi	on a holiday, he wrot	e two books.	
	(a) is	<b>b</b> was being	© was	d had been
	Fill in gap:		44494400000000000000000000000000000000	000000000000000000000000000000000000000
		he continued wor	kina.	
		tired, he could go for a		
18	She decided to orde	er a salad now	she had started a d	list
10	we ren feet	we missed the train	she had started a d	ilet.
60	Taka is bath alawar	, we missed the train.		
-	Toka is both clever			
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
21	The referee cancell	ed the match because t	the heavy rain.	[
22	Despite swimming i	s useful, I don't practise	e it.	
युख	While I was being yo	oung, I played football.		[
24	The hotel was fully I	booked, but we stayed a	at a guest house.	
25	I went to school des	spite I was ill.	_	[]



# Advanced Exercises Mark

	Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1	poverty he	has, he bought a large	villa.	
	<b>a</b> Whatever	<b>b</b> However	© Although	<b>d</b> Despite
2	Strong he i	is, he couldn't lift the ca		
	(a) although		© despite	d so
8	He woke up very la	ite,he didn't ca	tch the train.	
	(a) although	<b>b</b> so	© because	<b>d</b> however
4	My father could ha	ve taken you to the airp		
	<b>a</b> so	<b>b</b> as well as		d but
E		seen him before, I knew		(D) AAN
_	@ Because	<b>b</b> Although	© So	<b>d</b> When
6		red all day, I'm	going to bed early to	onight.
_	@ because	(b) but	© <b>SO</b>	
4	Not only he	e miss his family but he	is also experiencing	g culture snock.
_	(a) has	<b>b</b> does assed the test,	© nad	d do
8	They told him he pa	assed the test,	ne dian't believe the	em.
	(a) despite	<b>b</b> due to	© but	d so
Ų	We enjoyed the foo	otball match the	e dust storm.	(A) because
44	(a) in spite	<b>b</b> in case	© despite	d because
	We had to change	the plans prob	lems we hadn't expe	ectea.
44	a owing to	<b>b</b> because	© almougn	d so as to
UU		ne novel you lent me, I h	naven't finished it ye	
44		<b>b</b> As well as		d Due to
Q	the hotel v	vas expensive, we enjoy	yed staying there.	<b>d</b> Besides
66		<b>b</b> Even though		(d) Desides
<b>U</b> E		ed, Saif did his homewo	© gone	<b>d</b> going
40	@ went	<b>b</b> go		d going
UC	visiting Eg	ypt, most tourists take	© But	d While
46	Ma aculdo't buy th	<b>b</b> Therefore newspaper t	he shon was closed	•
UC		_	(a) but	d Although
har- war	<b>3 SO</b>	<b>b</b> because		, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
	Fill in gap:			
		p early is advisable, ma		ie.
		or's skill, he couldn't sav		
16	Bravely tl	hey fought; they had no	chance of winning.	
16	his old ag	ge, he still runs the facto	ory.	
		torm, we couldn't go sv		
11000	Find the mistake			
6/	No. 1 is because I decreased to 1991 t		lete	
		c, I arrived at the office		[
		e is, he failed the exam.		[
		s as he was late for his s		[
		s harmful, they can't giv Jana know how to swim		[
4	HICHIEL TOKATION	Jana Kilow How to Swill	••	L



#### paniping Jean

## ing. forms or the infinitive

				) بعدها .to + inf:	لأفعال الأتبة بأتر
decide	يقرر	refuse	يرفض	seem	يدو
arrange		wish		volunteer	تطوع
agree	يوافق	threaten		tend	ميل
expect	يتوقع	prove	یثبت / یبرهن	-1	قسم
hope		prepare		hurry	بسرع
learn		choose		guarantee	ضمن
offer		pretend		hesitate	بردد
plan	يخطط	request		seek	سعى إلى
promise		deserve	يستحق		يفشل
want		manage	يتمكن		
✓ Toka hopes	to be an eng	ineer.	Jana promise	d to study hard	•
				ي بعدها فعل مضاف له g	
deny		spend		resist	يقاوم
enjoy	يستمتع	appreciate		resume	ستأنف
admit		postpone		put off	بۇجل
avoid		fancy		delay	ؤخر
finish		imagine		miss	فتقد
practise		complete		necessitate	یحتم / یستلزم
suggest	يقترح	involve		can't help	10 40 1 , 41
dislike		include	يشمل	ونفسه	لا يستطيع أن يمنع
			- 40		
understand  He admitted s		risk nobile. ✓	regret not tro	consider avelling abroad.	يفكر في
He admitted s Thank you for	not making i	nobile. ✓	I regret not tro :not ρ I apologize for		يفكر في ينفي الفعل المد rly.
He admitted s Thank you for hate	not making i	nobile. ✓ noise. ✓ ون اختلاف في المعني:	l regret not tro not م apologize for فعل مضاف له ing بد	<mark>avelling</mark> abroad. ضاف له <mark>ing</mark> باستخدار r not <mark>coming</mark> ear	يفكر في ينفي الفعل المد rly.
He admitted s Thank you for	not making ا یکره	nobile. ✓ noise. ✓ ون اختلاف في المعني:	I regret not tro not p: I apologize for فعل مضاف له ing بد يحب	avelling abroad. ضاف له ing باستخداد r not coming ear ني بعدها to + inf أو د continue	يفكر في ينفي الفعل المد rly.
He admitted s Thank you for hate love	not making ا یکره یعره	nobile. ✓ noise. ✓ ون اختلاف في العني: like prefer	I regret not tro not م: I apologize for فعل مضاف له ing بد يحب يغضل	avelling abroad. ضاف له ing باستخداد r not coming ear ني بعدها .to + inf در continue start (begin)	يفكر في ينفي الفعل المه rly. الأقعال الآتية يأت يستمر يبدأ
He admitted s Thank you for hate love	not making ا یکره ایعب ایعب ایعب	nobile. ✓ noise. ✓ ون اختلاف في المعني: like prefer م ومع .to+ inf	I regret not tro not p: I apologize for فعل مضاف له ing بد يحب يفضل يفضل	avelling abroad. ضاف اله ing باستخداد r not coming ear ني بعدها to + inf. أو continue start (begin) سيط في الغني إذا أخذت g	يفكر في  ينفي الفعل العاد  rly. الأفعال الآتية يأت  يبدأ  راختلاف ب
He admitted s Thank you for hate love	not making ا یکره ایکب ایمب دیث بشکل مخصص دیث بشکل مخصص دیث + inf. la	nobile. noise. ون اختلاف في المعني:  like  prefer  م ومع .to+ inf الحد	I regret not tro not p: not p I apologize for فعل مضاف له ing بد يحب يعضل يفضل يفضل العديث بشكل عاد مقبل الأفعال الساب	avelling abroad. ضاف له ing باستخداد r not coming ear ني بعدها to + inf. أو continue start (begin) سيط في المعني إذا آخذت و vould إ	يفكر في  ينفي الفعل العاد  rly. الأفعال الآتية يأت  يبدأ  راختلاف ب
He admitted s Thank you for hate love	not making ا یکره ایکب ایمب دیث بشکل مخصص دیث بشکل مخصص دیث + inf. la	nobile. noise. ون اختلاف في المعني:  like  prefer  م ومع .to+ inf الحد	I regret not tro not p: I apologize for فعل مضاف له ing بد يحب يفضل يفضل	avelling abroad. ضاف له ing باستخداد r not coming ear ني بعدها to + inf. أو continue start (begin) سيط في المعني إذا آخذت و vould إ	يفكر في  الفعل الما الأفعال الآتية يأت  الأفعال الآتية يأت  يستمر  الختلاف با
He admitted s Thank you for hate love	not making ا یکره یعب یعب یعب دیث بشکل مخصص دیث بشکل مخصص دیث بشکل مخصص ا to + inf. لص	nobile. noise. ون اختلاف في المعني: like prefer مومع to+ inf. بقة فانه يأتي بعده	I regret not tro not p I apologize for فعل مضاف له ing بد يحب يحب يفضل يفضل يفضل المديث بشكل عاد V قبل الأفعال الساب I'd like to mee	avelling abroad. ضاف له ing باستخداد r not coming ear ني بعدها .to + inf ني بعدها .continue start (begin) سيط في المعني إذا أخذت g اذا استخدمنا vould et Mr Ahmed.	يفكر في  الفعل الما الأفعال الآتية يأت  الأفعال الآتية يأت  يستمر  الختلاف با
He admitted s Thank you for hate love (وقت الكلام)	not making ا یکرہ ایعب ایعب دیث بشکل مخصص to + inf. lo	nobile. noise. اون اختلاف في المعني: الله في المعني: like prefer مومع to+ inf. الحالمة يأتي بعده .	I regret not tro not p I apologize for فعل مضاف له ing بد يحب يخب يفضل يفضل المديث بشكل عاد v قبل الأفعال الساب I'd like to mee	avelling abroad. ضاف له ing باستخداد r not coming ear ني بعدها .to + inf ني بعدها .continue start (begin) سيط في المعني إذا أخذت g اذا استخدمنا vould et Mr Ahmed.	يفكر في  ينفي الفعل المه  الأفعال الآتية يأت  يستمر  يبدأ  ولكن للحظ أنه
He admitted s  Thank you for  hate love  (وقت الكلام)  I'd love to mee	not making ا یکره ایکب ایکب ایکب to + inf. اه et Mr Ahmed	nobile. noise. اون اختلاف في المعني: الله في المعني: like prefer مومع to+ inf. الحالمة يأتي بعده .	I regret not tro  not p  I apologize for  فعل مضاف له ing بد  يحب  يحب  يخب  يخب  الفضل  المناب شكل عاد  المناب اللفعال الساب  I'd like to mee  + to + V-ing	avelling abroad. ضاف له ing باستخداد r not coming ear ني بعدها .to + inf ني بعدها .continue start (begin) سيط في المعني إذا أخذت g اذا استخدمنا vould et Mr Ahmed.	يفكر في  ينفي الفعل المه  الأفعال الآتية يأت  يستمر  يبدأ  ولكن للحظ أنه  ولكن للحظ:
He admitted s  Thank you for hate love  (وقت الكلام)  I'd love to mee	not making ا یکره یکر یث بشکل مخصص دیث بشکل مخصص to + inf. lo	nobile. noise. اون اختلاف في المعني: الله في المعني: like prefer مومع to+ inf. الحالمة يأتي بعده .	I regret not tro  not p  I apologize for  فعل مضاف له ing بد  يحب  يحب  يخب  يخب  الفضل  المناب شكل عاد  المناب اللفعال الساب  I'd like to mee  + to + V-ing	avelling abroad. ضاف له ing باستخداد r not coming ear ني بعدها to + inf. ني بعدها continue start (begin) سيط في العني إذا أخذت g اإذا استخدمنا vould et Mr Ahmed.	يفكر في ينفي الفعل المه الأفعال الآتية يأة يستمر يستمر اختلافب ولكن للحظ أنه ولكن للحظ:
He admitted s  Thank you for  hate love  (وقت الكلام)  I'd love to mee	not making ا یکره ایعب ایعب ایعب ایعب to + inf. اه et Mr Ahmed Pref the internet	nobile.   noise.   ون اختلاف في المعني:  like  prefer  ومع to+ inf. الحالة لله الحالة	I regret not tro  not p  I apologize for  فعل مضاف له ing بد  یخب  یخب  یفضل  یفضل  المناب بشکل عاد  الم اللفعال الساب  I'd like to mee  + to + V-ing  V.	avelling abroad. ضاف له ing باستخداد r not coming ear ني بعدها to + inf. او ف continue start (begin) سيط في العني إذا أخذت g vould المتخدمنا thr Ahmed.	يفكر في  ينفي الفعل المه  الأفعال الآتية يأة  يستمر  إختلاف به  ولكن للحظ أنه  ولكن للحظ:  الأفعال والظروف
He admitted s  Thank you for hate love  (وقت الكلام)  I'd love to mee	not making ا یکره ایعب ایعب ایعب ایعب to + inf. اه et Mr Ahmed Pref the internet	nobile.   noise.   ون اختلاف في المعني:  like  prefer  ومع to+ inf. الحالة لله الحالة	I regret not tro  not p  I apologize for  فعل مضاف له ing به  يحب  يحب  يخب  يخب  الفضل المحديث بشكل عاد  الأفعال الساب  I'd like to mee  + to + V-ing  V.  فقط بدون to	avelling abroad. ضاف اله ing باستخداد r not coming ear ني بعدها .to + inf. continue start (begin) سيط في المعني إذا أخذت g vould استخدمنا at Mr Ahmed.	يفكر في  ينفي الفعل المه  الأفعال الآتية يأة  يستمر  إختلاف به  ولكن للحظ أنه  ولكن للحظ:  الأفعال والظروف
He admitted s  Thank you for  hate love  (وقت الكلام)  I'd love to mee	not making ا یکره ایعب ایعب ایعب ایعب to + inf. اه et Mr Ahmed Pref the internet	nobile.   noise.   ون اختلاف في المعني:  like  prefer  ومع to+ inf. الحالة لله الحالة	I regret not tro  not ρ  I apologize for  فعل مضاف له ing به  يحب  يحب  يخب  يخب المناف المالي المالي المالي الأفعال الساب  I'd like to mee  + to + V-ing  V.  ito فقط بدون to  let make	avelling abroad. ضاف اله ing باستخداد r not coming ear ني بعدها .to + inf. continue start (begin) سيط في المعني إذا أخذت g vould استخدمنا at Mr Ahmed.	يفكر في  ينفي الفعل المه  الأفعال الآتية يأت  يستمر  اختلافب  ولكن للحظ أنه  ولكن للحظ:  الأفعال والظروف



(to+ inf. في المجهول يأتي بعدهم make المجهول أني بعدهم

√ The teacher made Ali repeat his homework again.

⊙ الأفعال الآتية يمكن أن يأتي بعدها .to + inf أو فعل مضاف له ing مع وجود اختلاف في المعنى:

		VANDALE AND THE CONTRACTOR OF THE PARTY OF T	***************************************
stop	يتوقف	forget	ينسى
remember	يتذكر	regret	يأسف
try	يحاول / يجرب		
romombor to t	infinitivo	رشري المدفعات	بتذك أن بقود بعما

√ He remembered to call his friend.

يقوم بعمل شيء ثم يتذكر أنه (فعله) remember + gerund

√ He remembered watching this film.

forget to + infinitive (لم يفعله) ينسي أن يفعل شيئا (لم يفعله)

✓ Nadia forgot to close the gate.

forget + gerund يفعل شيئا ثم ينسي أنه فعله

√ Nadia forgot reading the novel.

regret to + infinitive يشعر بالأسف لأن يقول أو يخبر شخص شيئا ما

✓ He regretted to say that my son was loser.

regret + gerund يشعر بالندم علي شيء حدث

✓ He regretted watching this play. It was boring.

try to + infinitive (وغالبا لا ينجح)

✓ The student tried to escape, but the headmaster caught him.

(يقوم بعمل شيء ليري نتيجته / يُجرب عمل شيء)

√ Try wearing this dress.

√ Try taking an aspirin.

stop to + infinitive يتوقف لكي يفعل شيئا

✓ He stopped to smoke.

stop + gerund يتوقف عن عمل شيء

✓ He stopped smoking.

🗗 استخدام v + ing بعد to في التعبيرات الآتية:

due to	بسبب	in addition to	بالإضافة إلى	take to	يعتاد علي
lead to	يؤدي إلى	thanks to	بفضل	be used to	معتاد
object to	يعارض علي	owing to	بسبب	get used to	يعتاد علي
look forward to	يتطلع إلي	be opposed to	معارض لـ	be accustomed to	معتاد علي

▼ يستخدم فعل مضاف له ing بعد التعبيرات الآتية

be busy	مشغول	can't stand	لا يحتمل	it's no good	لا فائدة من
don't mind	لا مانع	can't help	لا يتوقف عن	it's no use	لا فائدة من
feel like	يرغب/يريد	how about	ماذاعن	it's a waste of money	مضيعة للمال
be worth	يستحق	what about	ماذاعن	it's a waste of time	مضيعة للوقت

✓ She has difficulty walking.

√ It's a waste of time surfing the internet.

√ I feel like having a cold drink.

♦ أفعال يأتي بعدها مفعول ثم .to + inf في المعلوم و في حالة المبني للمجهول تأتي .to + inf بعد الفعل مباشرة

advise	ينصح	encourage	يشجع	order	يأمر
allow	يسمح	expect	يتوقع	permit	يسمح

#### Gank' Grammar



1		w			
ask	يطلب	promise	يعد	persuade	يقنع
invite	يدعو	help	يساعد	force	يجبر
tell	يأمر	teach	يعلم	command	يأمر
choose	يختار	challenge	يتحدي	beg	بتوسل
require	يتطلب	want	يريد	instruct	يعطى توجيه
		・ できた できた できた できた かんかん かんかん かんかん かんかん かんかん かんかん かんかん かん	PARTITION OF THE STATE OF THE S		

- ✓ I advised Ali to come to my birthday.
- ✓ Ali was advised to come to my birthday.

#### Important Notes

• to + inf. في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات التالية نستخدم

happy / sad / glad / pleased / lucky / relieved / amazed.... + to inf.

✓ It is difficult for her to get up early.

✓ It was easy for Jana to study English.

to + inf. : في حالة وجود فعل بعد الصفات أدوات الاستفهام

how to + inf. / what / how to + inf. / where to + inf. ......

- √ I don't know how to go to the club.
- ✓ He is in a tight corner; he didn't know what to do.

🕜 لاحظ الفرق بين:

#### Like / would like / feel like

- ✓ Seif likes to play (playing) football.
- ✓ Seif 'd like to play football.
- √ Seif feels like playing football.
- الأفعال الآتية يستخدم بعدها المصدر ليدل على أننا شاهدنا أو سمعنا الحدث بالكامل ويأتي بعدها الفعل مضافا لـ ing ليـدل علي أننا سمعنا أو شاهدنا جزء من الحدث:

hear	يسمغ	notice	بلاحظ
see	يري	watch	بشاهد

✓ heard Toka sing a song.

= I heard the whole song.

√ heard Toka singing a song.

= I heard part of the song.

⊙ استخدام .to + inf بعد الكلمات:

### the first .../ the second ..../ the last ...../ the next.....

- √ Ahmed was the first to get the high mark.
- √ Toka was the last to attend the meeting.

🗗 يُستخدم المصدر بدون to بعد الأفعال الناقصة:

## can / could / may / might / must / mustn't / needn't / shall / should / will / would

- √ They must attend the conference.
- √ She can run very quickly.
  - نعل help يأتى بعده المصدر مع to أو بدون to
- √ Toka helped Jana do her homework.
- √ Toka helped Jana to do her homework.
  - ♦ الأفعال الآتية يأتي بعدها ing في حالة عدم وجود مفعول، و يأتي بعدها .to + inf في حالة وجود مفعول:

advise	ينصح	forbid	يمنع	permit	70
allow	يسمح	recommend		encourage	بشعع

- √ I advise you to read this novel.
- √ My Parents allow us to sleep late.
- ✓ I advise reading this novel.
- √ My Parents allow sleeping late.







	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:		
1	He stopped	and put his pen down	•		
	(a) writing	<b>b</b> to writing	<b>©write</b>	d to write	
2	On my way home, I	stoppedAl-Ah	ram Weekly as I enjoy	it.	
	a bought	<b>b</b> buying ffee 2 years ago.	© buy	d to buy	
3	I stoppedco	ffee 2 years ago.		•	
	(a) drink	<b>b</b> to drink	© drinking	d to drinking	
4	A knife is used to	meat		<b>2</b>	
	@ cut	<b>b</b> cutting	© be cut	d being cut	
5	We are expected	<b>b</b> cuttinglate for the meet	ing today.		
	@ be	<b>b</b> being Geology this year.	© to be	d been	
6	Maher starts	Geology this year.			
_	(a) study	b to studying mitted the wind	© studying	d studied	
7	One of the boys adr	nitted the win	dow.		
	(a) to break	(D) broke	(C) ndd broken	<b>d</b> breaking	
8	Would you like	coffee or tea?	© are drinking	<b>(</b> ) 11.11	
	@ drink	<b>b</b> to drink	© are drinking	d drinking	
9	My friend is forced.	me in the exar	n.		
	@ to help	(b) help	c helps	d helping	
10	I regrettedh	ner in public. It was ba	© helps ad for her.	O to blooming	
	(a) Blame	<b>b</b> blaming	c to blame	d to blaming	
QQ	He denied th	hat had thing. In tact.	he was innocent.		
44	(a) to do	(b) did	(c) doing	(d) (d)	
12	Are you busy	this book?	© doing © reading e don't have enough m	(A) manufa	
44	@ read	(b) to read	© reading	@ redas	
(E	We'd really like	on holiday but we	e don't nave enough m	oney.	
44	(a) to going	(b) be going	© to go its excitement and urb	<b>d</b> going	
U	I can't imagine	in the city. I enjoy	its excitement and urk		
40	a not living	b to live	© living	W IIVE	
de	She spent too much	h timein the ga	arden yesterday.	A was playing	
		(b) playing	© plays	was playing	
	Fill in gap:	AND	1414 1414 1414 1414 1414 1414		
16	A saw is used to	wood.			
16	Are you used to	up early?			
	_	her at a party onc	e.		
-	I suggest that you.	· ·			
			a burt his log		
20	My uncle stopped.	football after h	le nurt his leg.		
****	Find the mistake,	then correct it:	\$ \$44440000000	rino.	
20	I went to the party	vesterday, but I didn't	remember telling Ade	el about my new car.	
					٠
26	They made him pay	ying money back to th	em.	[	
20	Stop to shout. You	are giving me a head	ache.	[	
20	On our way to Alex	, we stopped buying	some fast food.	[	
20	If you don't stop to	waste your time, I'll p	ounish you.	[	٠



## Mark المحالية Intermediate Exercises

	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	1
1	Do not forget	off the light before	you go out.	
		<b>b</b> to switch		<b>d</b> switched
2	He suggested that s	hea study pla	n for this year.	
	@ making	<b>b</b> to make	© made	<b>d</b> make
3	I remember	that funny man last ye	ear when he amused (	us with his jokes
		<b>b</b> meet		d had met
4		to Paris next		
_		<b>b</b> to travel		d travel
6		d, I stoppedh		
		<b>b</b> shaking	© shake	d to shaking
6		dthat book.		
		<b>b</b> that he read		d to reading
7		her friends at the par		
	<b>a</b> seeing	<b>b</b> to seeing	© to see	d see
8	You should avoid	friends with suc	h bad people.	
		<b>b</b> making		d to making
9	I would prefer to hel	p my father rather tha	an TV.	
	(a) watch	<b>b</b> to watch	© watching	<b>d</b> watched
10		before the meeting st		
		<b>b</b> to leave		d left
QQ	I avoid bad t	hings which make my	parents upset.	
	(a) to do	<b>b</b> did	© doing	d do
12	The headmaster do	esn't allowto s	school late.	
	(a) to come	<b>b</b> coming	© came	<b>d</b> with coming
13		the best student in th		
	(a) will choosing	<b>b</b> choosing	© to choose	d to be chosen
14	We decided	in a five-star hotel.		
	(a) to stay	<b>b</b> staying	© to staying	<b>d</b> stay
15		all my jobs yet.		
	@ do	<b>b</b> to do	© to doing	<b>d</b> doing
to the way	Fill in gap:			***************************************
16	Would you like	the faculty of arts?		
		used to in the		
				a had anakan
			d manner in which she	e nad spoken.
		friends with suc		
44	Please, remember.	phone your fri	ena.	• • • •
	Find the mistake, t	then correct it:		
21	On my way home I s	topped buying a news		[
22	I like to watching Ind	dian series.	3	Ī
		read the book I lent y	you?	[
24	My sister objected d	loing all the washing i	up alone.	[
25	He felt exhausted as	he has never been u	sed to do such hard v	vork. [



## **A dvanced E xercises** Mark

	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c or	d:			
1	I'da visit to P	aris next year.				
	a like pay	<b>b</b> like to paying	© like paying	d like to pay		
2		as he was busy				
		<b>b</b> arranging		<b>d</b> arranged		
3	I can't forget	. It was a painful expe	rience.			
		<b>b</b> being bullied		<b>d</b> bullied		
4	Your car certainly needsbefore your long drive.					
		<b>b</b> be checked		d checked		
6	Mohammed'd rather	go out thanat	home.			
	(a) stay	<b>b</b> stays	<b>©</b> staying	<b>d</b> stayed		
6	Ali was the first	_				
	@ read	<b>b</b> reading	© to read	d has read		
7	He was made	a fine for driving his	car fast.			
	a to pay			<b>d</b> paid		
	My father drives me.	my school eve				
		0	© with	<b>d</b> to		
		at man when I was nir				
		<b>b</b> met		<b>d</b> meeting		
		a course durin				
		<b>b</b> to take	<b>C</b> takes	d be take		
	Never stop I	_				
		<b>b</b> to eating		d eat		
		pped, every o				
		<b>b</b> to sing	© is singing	d sings		
<b>18</b>	We choseby	train.				
		<b>b</b> on travel		d to travel		
		the new art ex				
44	(a) to see	<b>b</b> to be seen	© seeing	d to seeing		
		this team. He t				
	@ joins	<b>(b)</b> join	© to join	<b>d</b> joined		
	Fill in gap:					
16	Many people in our	town to build	the new bridge.			
		me to practise				
	_	oetic, he can't help	The state of the s			
	_	bullying among		amily		
Auto are he		off the gas befor	e ne went out. He is si	ure.		
	Find the mistake, t	hen correct it:				
21	Our house was robb	ed last night since we	forgot locking the fro	ont door. [		
	-	nied steal the ruler fro				
-		e for not wearing the		[		
		port with me, so I had		[		
25	You should try to go	up in a balloon. You'd	really love it.	[		



#### الأسائي والأهر

#### **Wishing and regret**

#### I wish / If only

ر عن موقف غير حقيقي في المضارع ( امنية في المضارع)	ا للتعبي wish / If only المتعبي البسيط بعد
I wish I knew what to do about the problem	n. (I don't know)
✓ I wish you didn't have to go so soon.	(You have to go)
✓ Do you wish you lived near the sea?	(You don't live near the sea.)
I wish I knew where I put my keys.	(I don't know where I put my keys.)
[ ✓ I wish I were tall.	(I am short.)
✓ I wish you had a car.	(You don't have a car.)
	(I don't live an exciting life.)
Jana wishes she didn't have to work hard.	(Jana has to work hard.)
التعبير عن موقف في الماضي (امنية في الماضي) (ندم)	🕜 يستخدم الماضي التام بعد Wish / If only في حالة ا
I wish I'd known about the party. I would ha	ave gone if I'd known. (I didn't know.)
It was a stupid thing to say. I wish I hadn't	said it. (I said it)
I wish I had applied for that job.	(I didn't apply for that job.)
	(I didn't meet Jana before.)
✓ I wish I had studied hard last year.	(I didn't study hard last year.)
If only Toka hadn't failed the English test.	(Toka failed the English test.)
Ali's going on a trip to Alex soon. I wish I w	vas going too. (I'm not going.)
If only I hadn't eaten so much cake yesterd	ay. (I ate so much cake yesterday.)
ا تعتبرات متساوين مع حالات <b>if</b> الثانية و الثالثة :	wish / If only للحظ في حالةً وجود جملتين بعد
I wish I hadn't wasted all my money. I would	have bought a car.
√ If only she hadn't complained to the manage	er, everything would have been all right.
I wish I could have (done something) = I regre	t that I could not do it:
√ I hear the party was great. I wish I could he	ave gone. (but I couldn't go)
ع (would ويستخدم would مع / wey مع / she / he / you / they	😙 في حالة التعبير عن المستقبل تستخدم .could+ inf مِ
خدم would للتعبير عن الشكوي	it أو يمكننا استخدم Could للتعبير عن المقدرة و تست
√ I wish I could read quickly.  ✓ If or	nly I <b>could</b> drive a car.
⇒ We often use I wish would to complain about	ut a situation:
√ The phone has been ringing for five minut	es. I wish someone would answer it.
√ I wish you'd do something instead of just s	itting and doing nothing.
Compare	
<b>○</b> We use I wish would to say that we w	
not use I wish would to say how we v	
✓ I wish Sarah would come.	(= I want her to come)
but I wish Sarah was (or were) here now.	(NOT I wish Sarah would be)
✓ I wish somebody would buy me a car.	
but I wish I had a car.	(NOT I wish I would have)
We use I wish wouldn't to complain al	bout things that people do repeatedly:

✓ I wish you wouldn't keep interrupting me.

(= please don't interrupt me)



Important Notes 🧊 في حالة عدم وجود فاعل بعد wish يأتي بعدها 📹 + to بمعني يريد

wish to + inf. = want to

- √ I wish to see the principal, please.
- √ Toka wishes to achieve her goals.

🗐 في حالة وجود ضمير او اسم بعد wish يأتي بعدها اسم

wish ... + n. (wish someone something)

√ I wish Jana a happy life.

- √ I wish you a speedy recovery.
- ✓ I wish you all the best in the future.
- ✓ I saw Mark before the exam and he wished me good luck.

#### hope

🗐 تختلف hope عن wish في حالة وجود hope نستخدم في الجملة التالية لها مضارع بسيط او مستقبل بسيط

hope + فاعل + future simple / present simple

✓ I hope Toka becomes an engineer.

✓ I hope Toka will become an engineer.

Compare

I wish and I hope:

- √ I wish you a pleasant stay here.
- √ I hope you have a pleasant stay here.

(NOT I wish you have)

#### regret

- v+ing للتعبير عن الندم ويأتي بعدها regret للتعبير عن الندم ويأتي بعدها
- أ وتستخدم للتعبير عن الأسف في المضارع ويأتي بعدها.to+inf +

regret + v + ing يندم علي

ياسف علي .regret + to + inf

- ⇒ I regret doing something = I did it and now I'm sorry about it:
  - ✓ I now regret saying what I said. I shouldn't have said it.
  - ✓ Do you regret not going to college?
- ⇒ I regret to say / to tell you / to inform you (= I'm sorry that I have to say....etc.).
  - ✓ We regret to inform you that your application has been unsuccessful.

= I am sorry to tell you that your son is a loser.

- √ I regret to tell you that your son is a loser.
  - = I am sorry to tell you that your son is a loser.

🧻 في حالة وجود فعل مضاف له ing بعد regret نستخدم الماضي التام بعد l wish للتعبير عن الندم

- ✓ I regret not studying hard.
- = I wish I had studied hard.
- ✓ I regret wasting my time last year.
  - = I wish I hadn't wasted my time last year.



Wise Saying

I never dream of success. I worked for it لم أحلم يوماً بالنجاح ، بل عملت لتحقيقه





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	
-		e stadium tomorrow.	40. ALA C	
_	@ can	<b>b</b> could	© will	<b>d</b> may
2	Ihe would atter	nd the next meeting.	0	
	@ wish	<b>b</b> hope	© eager	<b>d</b> want
3	I wish I on a de	sert island; it's my de	arest dream.	
_	(a) had lived	<b>b</b> could live	© will live	d will have lived
4	If only Ihigh ma	ırks last exam.		
	@ had had		© have	<b>d</b> had
E	I wish she m	e!		
	@ loved	<b>b</b> love	© loves	d will love
6	If only I it wa	as so easy!		
	a had known		© would know	<b>d</b> know
7	If only I here	yesterday, the accid	lent wouldn't have ha	ppened.
	(a) had been	<b>b</b> was	© were	d would be
8	That music! I wish th			
_	would turn	<b>b</b> turn	© could turn	d have turned
9	I wish we the	at old car of yours.		
44	(a) bought	<b>b</b> hadn't bought	© didn't buy @	wouldn't have bought
10		ny advice, things wou		
44	(a) take	<b>b</b> would take	© took	d had taken
QQ	If only I Alex	during the summer he		
44	@ could go	<b>b</b> would go	© went	d had gone
UZ	If only my wife	here. It's a pity she	won't come back till	tomorrow.
44		<b>b</b> would be		d will be
(E		er when I had the time		
44		<b>b</b> have worked		d had worked
U		oney. I wish I		
46		<b>b</b> had earned		d earns
<b>U</b> E		to having a new car. S		_
	@ might	(b) could	© would	d must
	Fill in gap:			
16	I wish I the a	answer to that questic	on.	
		v how to play the guita		
	I wish she m			
		ed a little more last s	orina	
	l wish I taller		ormig.	
	Find the mistake, t			
99	I live very far from m	y office. I wish I will b	e nearer.	[]
	Jana wishes she will	sing well.	1	[]
	If only I aren't short.	all to automore to the state of	l = l=:	[]
66	This nouse is too sm	all. If only we had had at. If only you have ke	a bigger one!	[]
9	ico a pity you said th	at. II offiy you nave ke	:pt your mouth shut.	***************************************





Mark duoi gui

Choose the correct answer from a. b. c or d: If only I ..... more time for my hobbies but I don't. (a) have (b) has © had (d) am I wish ...... you in the summer, if possible. d had visited (b) visiting © could visit a to visit I wish I ..... my time in the holidays. a wouldn't waste (b) wasted (c) had wasted (d) hadn't wasted I wish he hadn't sold his car ..... week. (b) next @ last (d) every He wishes he ...... his PHD next month. d had got a would get (b) will get © gets 6 I'm sorry, I didn't bring my camera. I wish I..... it. a would bring (b) had brought © brought d could bring I really regret playing football in the street. If only I ........... done that. (b) hadn't © can't d couldn't If only I..... well. I'd have got high marks. (a) had answered (b) have answered (c) answered (d) answer If only she ...... my advice, things would have been easier. a had taken (b) has taken (c) took d would take 10 I wish I..... at the wedding, but I was in New York. © were d had been (b) could (a) would 10 I feel sick. I wish I ..... so much. © wouldn't have eaten d wouldn't (b) hadn't eaten a had eater **Q** Ali would like to give up smoking but he can't. If only he ..... give it up. (b) could c can a will **16** It's a pity she didn't go to the wedding party. She wished she ...... there. © will go (b) could go (a) had gone 14 I wish I .....have to work tomorrow, but unfortunately I do. © wouldn't a don't (b) didn't d won't The weather is horrible. I wish it .....raining. d will stop (a) would stop (b) stopped © stops Fill in gap: 1 haven't got any friends. I wish..... some. 11 I wish you..... the first prize next time. 16 If only he ..... with us now. Nada won't come to my birthday party. I wish she..... come. **Q** I wish I..... taller, I would play basketball. Find the mistake, then correct it: ſ......**1** 1 wish I can meet you tomorrow. The play was really enjoyable. I wish you had had with us. Γ...... It was too late. I wish I come earlier. If only I listened to you before I bought the car.





[.....]

**45** I wish I had known where I left my jacket.





and made a	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:					
1	I wish yousmoking. I'm sure you will have better health.					
	@ stop	<b>b</b> will stop	© would stop	d have stopped		
2	I wish she this o	car; it has caused her	a lot of trouble.			
	@ doesn't buy	<b>b</b> won't buy	© didn't buy			
3			This means that he ad	ctually his work.		
	a can't have neglec	ted	<b>b</b> is still neglecting			
_	© neglected		d had not neglected			
4	I regret starting to s	smoke; I wish I sn	noking.			
		<b>b</b> wouldn't start	© didn't start	d can't start		
6	I wish I a pilot v					
6	@ will be	<u> </u>	© were	d had been		
O	I can't afford to buy	my wife a gold armlet				
4	@ will	<b>b</b> have	© had	d could		
4	Iyou will come					
6	(a) hope	<b>b</b> hop	© wash	d wish		
8	He regretted not att	ending yesterday's m	eeting. He wished he			
6	@ would be		© was	d had been		
e	Sne wisned sne	well for the last exar	n; she couldn't answe			
44	@ will revise	_	© hadn't revised	d had revised		
<b>U</b> U	She wishes to		@a	<b>O</b>		
99	0	<b>b</b> be	©were			
44	Auei travelled to Ale	<b>b</b> would travel	n't comfortable. He wi			
16				d has travelled		
44		a lot of money who b will have saved		(A) hard served		
16			upon his useful a	d had saved		
	(a) was acted	<b>b</b> would act		d had acted		
		ineer. Really, I a		d ridd deled		
-	@ weren't	b had been	Cam not	d must be		
			vish you making			
	(a) will avoid	(b) avoided	© have avoided	d had avoided		
	Fill in gap:	•	<b>O</b>			
		something I was real				
	l'd like to give un em	something I was real	nly interested in. nly l give it up.			
18	I wish the school he	lidays longer.	ily i give it up.			
10	I expect he will arriv	e soon. I wish he	do that			
20	I was very cold. I wis	sh it warmer.	uo trat.			
	- · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·					
	Find the mistake, t					
4	What a careless dri	ver! I wish he is more	careful; two children			
90	wish to were a poli	ceman!		[]		
90	I wish I learnt how to	drive, I would have g	jot a licence.	[]		
		I wish I were my coal		[]		
45	I regretted not seeing her off at the airport. I wish I did so.					



#### Causative



لأحظ الفرق بين

ا cleaned my room.
المحالة الغرفة بنفسي.
المحالة على غرفتي منظفه. (شخص اخر قام بذلك)
المحالة على غرفتي منظفه. (شخص اخر قام بذلك)

مصدر to مفعول عاقل have - let - make في المبني للمعلوم

- √ The teacher had us do some extra work today.
- √ Toka let Jana play with her.
- ✓ Jana makes Toka do her homework before sleeping.

get - allow - force - في البني للمعلوم cause - permit

- ✓ Al Daifi got Seif to go with him to the club.
- √ The bright light caused her to blink.
- √ The doctor allowed the patient to eat anything.
- √ I forced my daughters to sleep early.
- ✓ My father permits me to go out at night every Friday.

التصريف have - let - make - get في المبني الثالث للفعل وعاقل في جملة مجهول - allow... للمجهول

- √ I have my hair cut.
- √ I had my teeth checked yesterday.
- ✓ Mona made Mai hit by her teacher.
- √ We always get our clothes washed.
- √ Ali is getting his car repaired.
- √ Mai had the roof repaired yesterday.

Important Notes

• We use have something done to say that we arrange for somebody else to do something for us.

Compare

✓ Jana repaired the roof. (= she repaired it herself)

Jana had the roof repaired.

(= she arranged for somebody else to repair it)

- √ "Did you make those curtains yourself?"
  - "Yes, I enjoy making things."
  - "Did you have those curtains made?"
  - "No, I made them myself."
- We use have something done as a replacement to the passive.
  - ✓ Ali had their bags stolen while he was travelling.

"His bags were stolen."

✓ Ahmed had his nose broken in a fight. "His no

"His nose was broken."

- We can use "get something done" instead of "have something done":
  - √ When are you going to get the roof repaired? (= h

(= have the roof repaired)





have	object	past participle
Lisa had	the roof	repaired yesterday.
Where did you have	your hair	cut?
Your hair looks nice. Have you had	it	cut?
Our neighbour has just had	a garage	built.
We are having	the house	painted this week.
How often do you have	your car	serviced?
I think you should have	that coat	cleaned.
I don't like having	my picture	taken.

ملاحظات

- وللحظ صيغة السؤال والإجابة مع causative
- ✓ Do you usually get your room cleaned?
  - So, I clean it myself.
- ✓ Did you have your meal prepared?
  - So, I didn't (have it prepared). I prepared it myself.
    - و الأمر مع causative للحظ صيغة النفي و الأمر مع
- √ I won't get my room tidied. I'll tidy it by myself.
- ✓ Get your hair cut! It's too long.

🗐 يمكن استخدام causative في كل الأزمنة كما يلي.

مضارع بسيط	active	<ul> <li>► She has her teacher explain the lesson.</li> <li>► She gets her teacher to explain the lesson.</li> </ul>
سرح بسيت	passive	► She has (gets) the lesson explained.
مضارع مستمر	active	<ul> <li>► She is having her teacher explain the lesson.</li> <li>► She is getting her teacher to explain the lesson.</li> </ul>
	passive	► She is having (is getting) the lesson explained.
مضارع تام	active	<ul> <li>She has had her teacher explain the lesson.</li> <li>She has got her teacher to explain the lesson.</li> </ul>
	passive	► She has had (has got) the lesson explained.
ماضي بسيط	active	<ul> <li>▶ She had her teacher explain the lesson.</li> <li>▶ She got her teacher to explain the lesson.</li> </ul>
	passive	► She had (got) the lesson explained.
ماضي مستمر	active	<ul> <li>She was having her teacher explain the lesson.</li> <li>She was getting her teacher to explain the lesson.</li> </ul>
- **	passive	► She was having (was getting) the lesson explained.
ماضی تام	active	<ul> <li>► She had had her teacher explain the lesson.</li> <li>► She had got her teacher to explain the lesson.</li> </ul>
	passive	► She had had (had got) the lesson explained.
مستقبل بسيط	active	<ul> <li>► She will have her teacher explain the lesson.</li> <li>► She will get her teacher to explain the lesson.</li> </ul>
	passive	► She will have (will get) the lesson explained.

Wise Saying

Do it with passion, or not at all
إما أن تقوم بما تحب ، أو لا تقم به على الإطلاق

ولكل طرسى اللثة الإنجليزية







	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:						
1	You should get your blood pressurefrom time to time.						
		<b>b</b> to measure		<b>d</b> measuring			
2	I went to the mecha	nic to have	O	<b>9</b>			
	a repaired my car	<b>b</b> my car repaired	© my car repair	d my car repairs			
3		enter the fron					
	@ fix		© to fix	d be fixed			
4	I had my teeth	*** *					
	O checked		© to check	d checks			
•	I had my dentist	my teeth.					
	@ checks	<b>b</b> check	© checked	d to check			
6	I will have my car						
_	@ repaired	<b>b</b> cooked	© trekked	<b>d</b> bitten			
7	The examiner made	usour identific	cation in order to be a	dmitted to the test.			
_	Showing	<b>b</b> show	© to show	<b>d</b> showed			
8		ersthe staff lie					
_	@ made	<b>b</b> got	© have	d allowed			
9	What made you	it ?					
44	@ do	<b>b</b> to do	© doing	d done			
10		ur visabefore it					
44		<b>b</b> to extend		d to be extended			
UU		of my house, I'll have y					
44	(a) to arrest	<b>b</b> arresting	© arrested	<b>d</b> be arrested			
UZ	I got my friend						
46		<b>b</b> driving		<b>d</b> driven			
<b>TE</b>		oss will let me tl	_				
40		<b>b</b> to take	© take	d taken			
UC	I had my friend						
46		<b>b</b> driving		d driven			
UE		living room because	_	•			
	having it decorate		<b>b</b> having decorated in				
	© having it decorate		d having decorate it				
	Fill in gap:		THE REPORT OF THE PROPERTY.				
00	Our neighbour	his child kidnappe	ed yesterday.				
W C	Why don't you have	a mechanica	it your car?				
		to stop drinking last					
90	Instead of buying a	new pair of shoes, I	my old ones rep	paired.			
	We'll get Jana			***			
	Find the mistake, t	hen correct it:					
21	He had us to cut our	r hair.		ſ			
		ied her room before s	she went out.				
28	I got my car checked	d at the garage once	a month.	Ī			
24	Every six months, I h	nave my eyes test by t	he oculist.	<u>[</u>			
25	I don't think I can get Ali agree to this suggestion.						

158





Mark duci pui

	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	or d:					
1	I usually or	nce a month.						
	@ make my hair	<b>b</b> have cut my hair	© get my hair	<b>d</b> hav	e my hair cut			
2		ther will probably						
	@let you have	<b>b</b> get you to have	©make you have	@to le	et you have			
		all the time, stuffs						
	@cough	<b>b</b> to cough if I had this article	<b>©</b> coughing	@con(	ghs			
4	Would you approve	if I had this article	?					
4	<b>a</b> to be copied	<b>b</b> to copy	©been copied	(d)copi	ed			
5	My son was made	the windows bef	ore he could go outsi	de to pla	ay.			
4			©to wash					
0			He is a conscientious					
4			©not waste	@was	te			
V		service station to ha		(A) est				
0	(a) filling	<b>b</b> filled	CTO TIII	<b>Ofill</b>	-4			
O	Self really wanted a	dog, but his parents	wouldn'thim h	ave a po	et.			
0	Colet	bervies applies	©permit	allo	W			
•	m arraid Jana	her visa applicat	uon reiusea.	d get				
46	L had a hard time	<b>b</b> havehis house.	C nas	u ger				
<b>U</b> C	I nad a nard time	nis nouse.	© found	dind	ina			
66	The government TV	commercials are try	ing to get people	smol	kina			
4	(a) to ctopping	hto eton	©stop	deton	ned			
16	Don't let yourself		Cslop	W 310p	ped			
44	Cheated	(b) cheating	© he cheated	(d)heir	na cheated			
16	Diane thinks televis	ion is a waste of time	© be cheated , so she won'th	er child	ren watch TV.			
-	@allow	(b) get	©let	@have				
14			I could go to a movie					
	@am having		Chad					
16	The farmer							
	(a) had checked his I	-	<b>b</b> had his horse che	cked				
	© get checked his he		d had checked his h	orse				
	Fill in gap:	***************************************						
16	A A A SA A SA A A A A A A A A A A A A A	to his homew	vork done by his class	mate				
		by my doctor last		mato.				
			iistory books at schoo	ol.				
		you go to the p		•				
		the river to get po						
	Find the mistake,							
60	· · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · · ·				r 1			
-	All stores must hav		v voctordov		[]			
		n sink checked, at six		or mo	[]			
			he servants did that fo se stolen this morning		[]			
				•	[			
de	We're going to get a maid help us at home.      [							

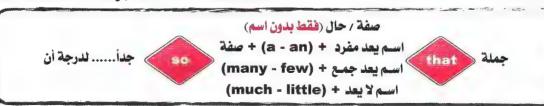
## PLANTS

#### **Giants' Grammar**

#### so - such - too - enough



- ✓ I didn't like the book. The story was so stupid.
- [ ✓ I like Jana and Toka. They are so nice.
  - ✓ It's a beautiful day, isn't it? It's so warm.



- √ The book was so good that I couldn't put it down.
- I was so tired that I fell asleep in the armchair.
- It was so old a car that we couldn't buy it.
  - I have so many toys that you can share me.
- We usually leave out that:
- ✓ I was so tired I fell asleep.

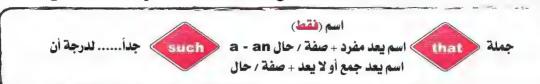
لاحظ أن يمكننا حذف that

مكنتا استخدام

- It was so hot so I drunk so much water.
  - √ I have so many books in my library.



- ✓ I didn't like the book. It was such a stupid story.
- ✓ I like Liz and Joe. They are such nice people.
- ✓ It was a great holiday. We had such a good time.



- ✓ It was such a useful book that Farouk read it twice.
- √ We are such clever boys that we can get the high marks.
- √ It is such expensive furniture that we can't afford buying it.
- ✓ It was such nice weather that we spent the whole day on the beach.
- We usually leave out that:
  - ✓ It was such nice weather we spent the whole day on the beach.

mice weather we spent the whole day on the beach.
.... such + اسم

- ✓ You mustn't trust her as she is such a liar.
- √ You always think good things are going to happen. You're such an optimist.



ا صفة / حال جداً

- √ He has suffered a mild heart attack nothing too serious.
- ✓ Don't come too near me you might catch my cold.
- ✓ If we all work together, it shouldn't take too long.

صفة / حال (سلبي) مصدر (اسم / ضمير مفعول for) صفة / حال

- ✓ Let's get a taxi. It's too far to walk home from here.
- √ She's too young to have a driving licence.
- √ The pool is too deep to swim in.
- √ The coffee was too hot for Al Daifi to drink.

too much +

مكننا استخدام

√ This project cost us too much money.

enough صفة / حال بدرجة كافية أن enough صفة / حال الم/ضمير مفعول enough for صفة / حال

- ✓ Ali is clever enough to answer the difficult questions.
- √ I am sure he will run quickly enough.

اسم (یعد / لا یعد) + enough

يمكننا استخدام

- ✓ I don't have enough money. ✓ She doesn't have enough tickets for all of us.
- ✓ I can't run very far. I don't have enough energy.
- ⇒ We also use enough alone (without a noun):
  - ✓ We don't need to stop for petrol. We've got enough.

#### **Important Notes**

so long	<b>3</b>	I haven't seen her for so long.
such a long time	<b>-</b>	I haven't seen her for such a long time. (not so long time)
so far	<b>-</b>	I didn't know it was so far.
such a long way	<b>&gt;</b>	I didn't know it was such a long way.
so much, so many	<b>-</b>	I'm sorry I'm late - there was so much traffic.
such a lot (of)	0	I'm sorry I'm late - there was such a lot of traffic.

#### Compare

too ... and not .... enough:

- √ You never stop working. You work too hard. (= more)
- √ You're lazy. You don't work hard enough.

(= more than is necessary)

(= less than is necessary)

#### Notice

- ✓ The food was very hot. We couldn't eat it.
  - = The food was so hot that we couldn't eat it.
  - = The food was too hot to eat.

(without it)

🗐 إذا جاءت **so** بداية الجملة نستخدم بعدها صيغة سؤال

....جملة ..... that + فاعل + فعل مساعد+ صفة / حال So

- √ So dark was if that we could hardly see.
- √ So lazy is he that he never helps out with the housework.





,					
	Choose the con	rect answer from a, k	o, c or d:		
1	I didn't like the b	ook. The story was	stupid.		
	(a)so	<b>b</b> such	© to	d enou	ugh
2	I will let you know	v tomorrow. Is that	soon?		
	@so	<b>b</b> such	© too	d enou	ugh
3	This question is t	oo difficult			
			r © to be answered	d to a	nswering
4	It was nic		spent the whole day on the	beach.	
	<b>O</b> SO	<b>b</b> such	© such a	<b>d</b> such	an
•		was such			
_			© old house	@an ol	d house
6		e fast on the	se roads!		
		<b>b</b> such	© such a	d so a	
7		rible weather that w			
4	@so	<b>b</b> such	_	d so m	nuch
8		_	easy to answer well.		
4		<b>b</b> such		<b>d</b> too	
9		to have a drivir	_		
44			© enough	<b>d</b> too	
UU	Some of us had t	o sit on the floor be	cause there weren't	_	
44	@so	<b>b</b> such	© too	denou	gh
UE			nts that he could not see t	-	
96		<b>b</b> such		d too	
UZ			hat he couldn't breathe.		
46			© such highly	d so hi	ghly
S.		. that his father deci			a la acce al
66			ive ©was he behaved	<b>d</b> he b	enavea
UC			. I watch it three times.	(A) thent	
46	@ there		© then	<b>d</b> that	
W.		seful information tha	_	<b>d</b> too	
-		<b>b</b> such a	Csoch	<b>a</b> 100	
	Fill in gap:				
16	I have to go. I die	dn't realise it was	late.		
16	I think she works	too hard. She looks	s tired all the time	•	
18	They've got	much money the	ey don't know what to do v	vith it.	
16	I like Liz and Joe	. They're nic	ce people.		
		•	dn't expect it to be	. nice da	ıy.
-					
		ke, then correct it:			
			oman! I hope I am in his s	noes!	[]
		ook. It was too a stu			[
-		ffee that I had two c	sups.		[
-	It was so a beaut		occutiful oves		-
de	one's very pretty	/. She's got such a b	eauului eyes.		[



## 2 Intermediate Exercises

Mark பியல் நடிக்

	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	1			
1	We don't have money to go on holiday right now.						
		<b>b</b> such	Ctoo	denough			
2	The book was so	that I couldn't p	ut it down.				
		<b>b</b> a good	Cwill	@a well			
3		don't have e	nergy.				
	@so	<b>b</b> such	Ctoo	denough			
4	I'm sorry I'm late - i	there was mu	ch traffic.				
	@so	<b>b</b> such	Cto	denough			
•	I'm sorry I'm late - t	there was a lo	ot of traffic.				
	@so	<b>b</b> such	Ctoo	denough			
6	You never stop wor	king. You work	•••				
_	@hard so	<b>b</b> such hard	©too hard	<b>d</b> hard enough			
7	I can't run very far. I	'm not					
			Cfit enough	denough fit			
8	The box was too hea	avy for me by	myself.				
_		<b>b</b> to lift		<b>d</b> lifting			
9	They had six childre	en. They hadn't exped	cted to have				
	@so	<b>b</b> such	©so many	dso much			
10	There were	people.					
	<b>Oso</b>	<b>b</b> such	©so many	dso much			
00	She isorganized	that if you enter her	room, you'll find eve	rything in its place.			
	@so good	<b>b</b> such	Cso well	denough			
12		ou didn't train					
	1 too hard	<b>b</b> hard enough	©so hard	d such hard			
16	I can't walk	to keep up with you.					
	(a) too fast	<b>b</b> fast enough	© so fast	d such fast			
14	It was hot v	veather that we turne	d on the air condition	ing.			
	@ such a	<b>b</b> so	<b>© such</b>	d too			
15	English language ta	ikes patience					
	<b>O</b> SO	<b>b</b> enough	Ctoo	dsuch			
	> Fill in gap:			and the state of t			
16	I didn't realise vou I	ived long way	from the city centre.				
			shame you couldn't				
			eep while I was watch				
				ing it.			
	<b>1</b> Everything is expensive these days, isn't it?						
	-	od. He wears	nice clothes.	•			
	Find the mistake, f		of 1 for all to 1 formation of two windows the formation of the administration of the formation of the forma				
			e speaks enough qui	etly. [			
		y. We had such good		[			
			ter his recent illness.	[			
		e news. It was enough	n shock.	[			
25	The food at the hotel was such awful						



#### Modal verbs

Giving Advice: Should & Shouldn't

أسداء النصح باستخدم بجب ولأبيجا

- 🗐 نستخدم should / shouldnt للنصيحة لنقول أن شيء ما جيداً (بنيغي فعله) أو غير جيد (لا بنيغي فعله).
  - 🧻 بعد should / shouldnt يأتي الفعل في المصدر (بدون اي اضافات و بدون to).
    - أ تأتى should / shouldnt مع جميع الضمائر و الأسماء سواء كانت مفرد او جمع.
- You should always wash your hands after you've touched the cat.
- Tourists should wear sun cream when it's very hot.
- You shouldn't walk too much in the sun.
  - √ You shouldn't touch that. It's dirty!
- In summer, tourists should wear a hat and ought not to sit in the sun.
  - 🗐 يتكون السؤال بهل كالأتي: (و يكون وعناه " هل بجب ...؟ )

?...تكملة الحملة ...... + مصدر + فاعل + Should

Should you go to school every day?

Yes, I should.

No. I shouldn't.

🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالأتي:

+ should / shouldn't + subject + verb......?

What should I try doing?

You should definitely try some windsurfing.

📋 للحظ صيغة المبنى للمجهول كالأتي:

should / shouldn't + be + P.P .....

- You should eat a lot of vegetables and fruits as they are healthy.
- √ A lot of vegetables and fruits should be eaten as they are healthy. (Passive)
  - 🗐 هناك بعض المصطلحات الأخرى التي نستخدمها في النصح و التي تحل محل shouldn't gshould

#### should

You ought to + inf.

If I were you, I would + inf.

I advise you to + inf.

My advice to you is to + inf.

You had better + inf.

It is better to + inf.

It is advisable for you to + inf.

It is desirable for you to + inf.

It is important for.... to + inf.

It will be a good idea to + inf.

#### shouldn't

You ought not to + inf.

If I were you, I wouldn't+ inf.

I advise you not to + inf.

My advice to you is not to + inf.

You'd better not + inf.

It is better not to + inf.

It is unadvisable for you to + inf.

It is undesirable for you to + inf.

It is important for.... not to + inf.

It will be a good idea not to + inf.

### Modal verbs of regret (blame)

- نستخدم ought to (ought not to) have + P.P of should (shouldn't) have + P.P وأ should (shouldn't) اللوم أو الندم لفعل أو عدم فعل شيء في الماضي
  - √ You shouldn't have arrived late for your exam.
  - √ I'm sorry! I ought to have come on time.
  - √ You shouldn't have wasted your time.



#### **Obligation & Necessity** التعيير عن (الالزام أو الضرورة أو التحريم). (الالزام أو الضرورة أو التحريم). 🧻 بعد must / mustnt يأتي الفعل في المصدر (بدون اي اضافات وبدون to). 🗐 تأتى must / mustnt مع حميع الضمائر والأسماء سواء كانت مفرد أو حمع. 🗐 للحظ استخدامات: must / mustn't + inf. √ You must leave your bins outside today. (القواعد و القوانين) ✓ I must work hard for the exams next week (الزام شخصي) ✓ I must buy a present for my mother. (مشاعر قوية) √ You must come to my party tonight. (دعوة قوية) ✓ They mustn't eat that cheese. It's green! ✓ You must stop smoking. (نصحة قوية) √ We must buy souvenirs for our friends here. (تذكرة بفعل شيء) بتكون السؤال بهل كالآتى: (و يكون معناه " هل يجب ...؟) ?...تكملة الحملة ...... + مصدر + فاعل + Must ✓ Must I turn right here? Tes, you must. No. I mustn't. 🗐 ىتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالآتى: + must / mustn't + subject + verb.....? ✓ What must I do to avoid traffic fines? You must stick to the rules. 🗐 للحظ صبغة المبنى للمحمول كالأتي: + must / mustn't + be + P.P ..... ✓ I must buy a present for my mother. (active) ✓ A present for my mother must be bought. (Passive) أ بمكننا استبدال must بالتعبيرات التالية: = It's necessary for ..... to + inf. = It's a necessity for ..... to + inf. must + nac = It's obligatory for ..... to + inf. = It's legal for ..... to + inf.

- ✓ You must turn right.
- ✓ It is necessary for you to turn right.
- ✓ It is obligatory for you to turn right.
- ✓ It is a necessity for you to turn right.
- ✓ It is a must for you to turn right.
- ✓ You must turn right.
- ✓ It is a must for you to turn right.
- ✓ You must turn right.
- ✓ It is a must for you to turn right.

📵 للحظ الفرق بين must و must

(فعل مساعد بمعني يجب و يأتي بعده المصدر) (اسم بمعنى ضرورة )

a necessity gnecessary للحظ الفرق بين

(فعل مساعد بمعني يجب و يأتي بعده المصدر)

(اسم بمعنی ضرورة )

= It's a must for ..... to + inf.



🗐 بوكننا استبدال **mustn't** بالتعبيرات التالية: = It's not allowed to + inf. ليس مسموحاً أن = It's not permitted to + inf. = It's forbidden to + inf. (from +ing) محرم مصدر + mustn't = It's prohibited to + inf. (from +ing) = It's banned to + inf. (from +ing) = It's against the law. ضد القانون أن = It's illegal to + inf. غبر قانونی أن It is against the law to park your car here. √ You mustn't park your car here. ✓ It is not allowed to park your car here. 

It is not permitted to park your car here. It is banned to park your car here. ✓ It is forbidden to park your car here. ✓ It is prohibited to park your car here. It is illegal to park your car here. 🗐 يمكننا أيضا استخدام **mustnt** للتعبير عن نصيحة قوية / الالتزام الشخصى ✓ You mustn't waste your time. ✓ I mustn't leave my bedroom untidy. السماح بالقبام cant للتعبير عن عدم السماح بالقبام بشيء ما المحادة الم √ You can't smoke in hospitals. have to - has to - need (have to / has to / need (to)) التعيير عن الزام مفروض علينا المنام have to / has to / need (to) نستخدم 🗐 بعد (بدون اي اضافات). have to / has to / need (to) he - she - it مع المفرد has to / needs (to) تأتى 🗐 we - they - I - you و الجمع have to / need (to) تأتي 🧃 √ We need to go to school on time. ✓ We have to go to school on time. ✓ She has to get a passport to travel to London. 🗐 في حالة النفي نستخدم don't have to / doesn't have to + inf. don't need to / doesn't need to / needn't + inf. ✓ She doesn't have to hurry, she isn't late for school. ✓ They don't have to buy bread; there is much in the fridge. 🗐 يتكون السؤال بمل كالأتي : (و يكون معناه " مل يجب ...؟ ) Po / Does + فاعل + have to / need (to) + inf. ...? No, we don't. ✓ Do you have to hurry? Yes, we do. 🗐 يتكون السؤال بأداة استفهام كالآتى: + have to / need (to) + inf. ? فاعل + do / does + أداة استفهام ✓ What does he have to do to avoid traffic fines? he has to stick to the rules. 🗐 للحظ صيغة المبنى للمجهول كالآتي: + have to / has to / need (to) + be + P.P ..... √ I have to buy a present for my friend. (active) ✓ A present for my friend has to be bought. (Passive)





	🗐 للتعبير عن الضرورة في الماضي نستخدم
had to + inf.	
I couldn't go out because I had to do my home	ework.
We had to do computer studies when we wer	
	🧻 في حالة النفي نستخدم
didn't have to +	
✓ She didn't have to hurry, she wasn't late for s	chool.
We didn't have to do computer studies when	
	<b>أ</b> للحظ أن:
had to +مصدر = It was necessary (for +	
I had to do my homework, so I couldn't go out	
= It was necessary for me to do my homework	
She didn't have to go shopping.  = It wasn't necessary for her to go shopping.	
- If washin necessary for their to go shopping.	b ay
When the springer of the sprin	ن تعبر didn't have to عن أن الشيء كان غير ض
	أما needn't have + p.p تعبر عن أن الشخص
<ul> <li>✓ He didn't have to get up early.</li> <li>✓ He needn't have got up early.</li> </ul>	(so he didn't get up early) (but he got up early)
The needin indve gor up earry.	(But he got up early) عدمة a must اسم بمعنى ضرورة :
√ Getting a driving licence is a must to drive a compared to the drive a compared to the drive and drive a compared to the drive and drive an	<b>3</b>
	🕜 لا نستخدم to بعد كلمة needn't يأتي بعدها الد
✓ We needn't go to the club.	
	<ul> <li>نستخدم التركيب be to بمعني يجب للتعبير عن الضائلة</li> </ul>
✓ Nadia is to admit that she did not know.	
must - have to - need	لاحظ الاختلاف بين
بي ا <mark>لم</mark> شاعر القوية والأمنيات وعمل الدعوات والنصيحة القويـة وتـذكر	تستخدم <b>.must + inf</b> للتعبير عن إلزام شخص
	أنفسنا بشيء.
√ I must work hard for the exams next week.	(الزام شخصي)
√ I must buy a present for my mother.	(مشاعر قوية)
√ You must come to my party tonight.	(دعوة قوية)
√ You must stop smoking.	(نصيحة قوية)
مع القواعد أو عندما لا تمتلك اختيار لفعل شيء ما (مضطر إلى).	have to / has to + infinitive আ 🗐
√ We have to go to school every day.	
✓ My father doesn't have to work today because	-
✓ She doesn't have to get up early. It's a holiday	
ق إلى شيء معين ونفيها .don't need to / needn't + inf: إلى شيء معين ونفيها	
<ul> <li>✓ Hassan needs to go to the bank after he finish</li> <li>✓ I don't need to buy / needn't buy a new pen. I'v</li> </ul>	
i don't hood to buy / needil i buy a new pen. I \	o an cady got one.



## الاستنتاج

#### Modal verbs of deduction

Key words Degree	Present Deduction استنتاج في المضارع	Past Deduction استنتاج فی الماضی
- I'm sure	استنتاج مؤكد في المضارع .must + inf	استنتاج مؤكد في الماضي. <b>must have</b> + <b>p.p.</b>
- I'm certain - I think - I believe	▶ It is made of gold; it must cost a lot of money.	► The floor was full of water; Toka must have forgotten to close the tap.
- Certainly	استنتاج مستبعد في المضارع .can't + inf	استنتاج مستبعد في الماضيp.p + can't have
- I suppose - Impossible	► It is made of plastic; it can't cost a lot of money.	► The floor was full of water; Toka can't have closed the tap.
- I'm not sure - I'm not certain	might (may - could) + inf. استنتاج محتمل في المضارع	might (may - could) have + p.p. استنتاج محتمل في الماضي
<ul><li>perhaps</li><li>It is probable</li><li>It is possible</li></ul>	► I think. Mr. Ahmed might be famous in the future.	▶ I didn't see Jana at school today. She might have been absent.

اصط

• يمكننا عمل استنتاج في الاستمرار في المضارع ونستخدم

(must - can't - might - may) + be+ v + ing

√ Where is Jana? -I'm not sure. She may be studying.

🕥 يمكننا عمل استنتاج في الاستمرار في الماضي ونستخدم

(must - can't - might - may) have + been + v + ing

√ I'm sure that Al Daifi was busy. He must have been preparing Giants' Revision.

mustn't ولكن لا يمكننا عمل استنتاج مستبعد في الماضي ونستخدم couldn't have+ P.P ولكن لا يمكننا عمل استنتاج مستبعد في الماضي ونستخدم

✓ Mr Ahmed couldn't have been lazy as he worked hard.

**Wise Saying** 

Never apologize for having high standards. People who really want to be in your life will rise up to meet them

لا تعتذر أبداً عن تميُّزك عمن حولك . إن من يريدون حقاً أن يكونوا في حىاتك سىرتفعون لىلتقوا ىك





Mark

	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	r d:				
1		nese tomatoes. They'v	44 44 144	ad			
-	muet wasii u	<b>b</b> doesn't have to	e all eady been wash				
2	Ali can't come out w	vith us this evening. H	o work loto	d mustn't			
		<b>bhad to</b>		d)mustn't			
3	Sief to work	on Saturdays	Citas to	(U) III USIII I			
•		<b>b</b> doesn't have	Chaent	d)mustn't			
4	You mustn't smoke	in sleeping rooms. Th	ois is a	Williosiff			
	@ prohibition	<b>b</b> necessity		(d) suggestion			
6	She owns a wonder	ful car. She p	cor	<b>d</b> suggestion			
		<b>b</b> can't be		d)must have been			
6	He ill. He ea	its like a horse	Ciliosi be	Willost Have been			
		<b>bcant be</b>	Ewon't be	dmust have been			
7	Nader the s	chool bus. He came to	o school late	Willost flave beeff			
		<b>bcan't have missed</b>		dcan't miss			
8	There have	been a sandstorm. Th	he streets are covere	d in cand			
		<b>bcant</b>		d may			
9	Mark is a really nice	person. You	meet him	Unidy			
	have to	<b>b</b> mustn't	Chas to	(d) must			
10	l work from	8.30 to 5.30 every day	v	dillosi			
	(a) have to	<b>bhad to</b>	c)has to	(d) must			
10	My son's watch	have cost me a fo	vrtune It's made of ni	actio			
-	@ can't	<b>(b) must</b>	Cmight	dmustn't			
12	We didn't have much	h time yesterday so w	e hurry	William 1			
-	a have to	<b>b</b> had to	Chas to	<b>d</b> )must			
18		night. I see m		Gillosi			
		<b>b</b> should		dhave to			
14	He go to sch	ool yesterday. It was	a holiday	Wildre 10			
-	@ needn't	<b>bwont</b>	Cdidn't have to	dmay not			
16	You finish it	today. It is your choice	ce.	Cindy nor			
	a have to		© had to	d don't have to			
114	Fill in gap:						
46	On no, I don't have	my keys! I hav	e left them in the taxi.				
46	Ali be happy. His girlfriend just agreed to marry him.						
40	You smoke outside. Smoking is not allowed inside the building.						
40	John buy some new shoes for last night's party.						
	"	es because I can't se	e so clearly.				
	Find the mistake, t	hen correct it:					
21	Do you have a minu	te? I needn't talk to yo	ou about something.	[]			
22	My school is not far.	I need take a taxi.	<b>3</b> .	[			
		ew car they have bou	ght this vear. They ca	n't be verv rich!			
			J J	[]			
24	What do I had to do to get a new driving licence?						
25	€ You needn't park here. It says "No Parking."						
	-		_				



## 2 Intermediate Exercises المعربة المعالمة المعا

-	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:				
1	Everything will be C	K. You worry	1.		
	@must	<b>b</b> have to	© needn't	<b>d</b> does	n't have to
2	He to get up	early, so he didn't.			
	@didn't need	(b) needn't	© mustn't	<b>@must</b>	•
3	Ahmed can stay her	e. He come w	rith us.		
	@needn <sup>†</sup>	<b>b</b> have to	© must	<b>d</b> has t	o
4	Don't tell anybody w	hat I said. You	keep it a secret.		
		<b>b</b> don't have to		<b>@must</b>	•
6		time. We hurr			
	@needn't	<b>b</b> have to	© doesn't have to	<b>d</b> has t	0
6	I have to talk to Ali. I	forget to cal	l him.		
	adoesn't have to	<b>b</b> mustn't	© need to	<b>@must</b>	•
1	Last week, Toka bro	oke her arm and	go to hospital.		
	<b>a</b> have to		© has to	<b>@must</b>	•
8	I to wear gla	asses for reading.			
	a have	<b>b</b> has	© must	<b>d</b> need	ln't
9	You park yo	our car here until you	pay for it.	_	
	@mustn't	<b>b</b> must	<b>©can't</b>	<b>@must</b>	be
10	When Mona	have to go after I had	d left?		
	@did	<b>b</b> doing	© does	<b>@do</b>	
QQ	The driver t	ake a side road.			
	@are to	<b>b</b> need	© is to	<b>@have</b>	to
10	Hani wear a	suit to work, but he			
	aneed to	<b>b</b> have to		<b>@mus</b>	
16	You've been travelli	ng all day. You	be tired.		
	@must	(b) can't	<u> </u>	<b>@</b> migl	
14	I often see that won		s street. Shel		r here.
_	@must		© should	<b>d</b> will	
Qe	I know that he has t	wo children, he		<b>A</b>	
	@may be	<b>b</b> must be	© can't be	<b>d</b> will	be
-	>> Fill in gap:				
10	At my sports club,	evervone wea	ar flat shoes. It's an in	nportan	t rule.
06	That woman drives	a very expensive car.	. She have a l	ot of mo	ney.
16	Oh, the phone is rin	ging. Answer it. It	be Toka. She alw	ays ring	s at this time.
10	19 Go and look in the kitchen for your gloves. They be in there.				
20	Do you know where	Ali is? He be	out - his car keys are	on the	table.
	Find the mistake,				
	·	chool by eight o'clocl	k everv dav.		<u></u>
			re are puddles every	where.	
20	To get promoted, ve	ou needn't improve yo	our computer skills.		[
20	You must run next t	o the swimming pool.	You might fall over.		[
You must run next to the swimming pool. You might fall over.  You needn't to mention this to your mother.					





## Intermediate Exercises Mark

	Choose the correct	t answer from a, b, c o	or d:	
1	Nada get ve	ery bored in her job.	She does the same thi	ng every day.
	@ must	(b) can't		d might
2	Ahmed is a professo	or of chemistry. He		<b>3</b>
	@must have	(b) must be	© can't have	d couldn't have
3	I haven't go	to the doctor for age	es.	
	(a) have to	(b) had to	© has to	<b>d</b> must
4	•	ease? Sorry, I	0	
	@mustn't		© need	d must
6	My son is ill so I		<b>©</b> 11333	<b>9</b>
	@mustn't	(b) has to	© have to	<b>d</b> may
6	I'm not working tom	orrow, so I g	et up early	
	adon't have to	<b>b</b> doesn't have to	© must	dhave to
9	That restaurant	he very good It'	s always full of people	
•		(b) can't	© mustn't	d)must
8	0	_	lan. You tell ar	
	a have to	(b) must	© mustn't	ddoesn't have to
9	It's strange story, bu	•		Gabesiii ilave lo
•	a must be	<b>b</b> can't be	© could be	dcan be
10		e on time. I I		G cuil be
44	a have to	<b>b</b> must	© mustn't	don't have to
00	_	job be recei		Gaoiii ilave io
44		<b>b</b> needn't to		<b>d</b> must
90		h time. Weh		Ulliusi
44		<b>b</b> don't have to		<b>@has to</b>
16		mputer, so I		unas io
44	(a) must		© will have	<b>@had</b>
14	0	ted me. She	0	Unida
44			© must have got	Acan't act
16	Why did be get up or	arly? How got up so	early. He could have	toyod in bod longer
44	That have	Monust have	© needn't have	Anged in bed longer.
-	Time to make	D IIIOSI IIOVE	C necum mave	diffectiff
	Fill in gap:			,
		ake. You try i		
17	Jana always does re	eally well on exams. S	She study a lot.	
18	We reallyur	nite in such a difficult	situation.	
19	At her first school, s	he to wear a	blue uniform.	
20	Come and see me to	morrow. You	come and see me to	morrow.
	Find the mistake, t	hen correct it:	W W	
	•	licines where childre	on can find thom	[1
		all day, you can't be		[]
			e mustn't love books.	
20	Does he has to use t	his card?	e musur ciove books.	[]
			water them before I w	
44	An my plants can t b	een dead: I for got to	water them before I w	encon nonday.





	Choose the correct	answer from a, b, c o	r d:	1	
1	I can manage the sl	hopping alone. You	go with me.		
	@must	<b>b</b> doesn't have to		<b>d</b> don't	have to
2	I must finish all my v	vork today or I			
	<b>a</b> have to	<b>b</b> had to	© has to	<b>@must</b>	
3	A: We used to live ve		y. B: Did you? It		
	@can't be	_	©must be		
4	A: Joe is a hard wor		be joking. He does		-
	@must		© mustn't	<b>@migh</b>	it
•	I can't find my phon	e anywhere. I	. it at work.		
_			© must have left		t have left
6			ated his poor parents.		
_	<u> </u>	<b>b</b> should		<b>d</b> need	กา
V		have been more car			
6		<b>b</b> may		d shou	
ŏ			ro yesterday. The wea		
•	<u> </u>	<b>b</b> have had	0	<b>d</b> have	been
9		d was correct. He		(Parell	ha
40		<b>6</b> may be		<b>d</b> can't	be
UU		s here. It's forbidden.		(d) shou	ıld
99	0	<b>b</b> mustn't	•	_	Л
UU			<ul><li>carry your passport</li><li>cought not to</li></ul>		a to
46		jacket on the floor . N		G Have	
WG	a qualit to	(acket off the floor . N	© mustn't have	(d) shou	ıldn't have
16			first time you are visit		
44	(a) can		© must	d have	e to
14			rrived. I wish that you	0	
-		<b>b</b> must		d will	
16			Our boss is an unforg	_	erson.
			© have to		
	Fill in gap:			-	
16	to the contract of the state of	l make an ann	pointment to see him.		
			e your speech. It was		ood.
18	Your motherb	e a great cook. You a	re always so keen to g	et back	home to eat!
		to be demolished to be		,	
			them I'm going to be la	ate hom	e today.
	Find the mistake,			3	-
		s, so we needn't walk.			[
		s, so we need it walk. ch are out of date mus			[]
26	It was raining heavi	lv so we must take a	taxi to get to the offic	e on tim	e. [
			e street is wearing a c		
		didn't have no choice	_		[]

#### General Exercise On Grammar



25

	Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1	did Suzan	leave home?	the second secon	
4	How long	<b>b</b> How long ago	© How much	<b>d</b> How many
2	I got home	e, the children were alre	ady asleep.	© many
A	By the time	<b>b</b> Until	© By	<b>d</b> Whenever
E	Hassan apologized	dshouting at me	9.	
	(a) at	(b) in	© for	d about
4	He denied	his mother's vase.		
a	(a) to break	<b>b</b> broke	© have broken	<b>d</b> breaking
e	If you your	room, you can go out to	o play.	
G	(a) have tided	<b>b</b> tided	© had tided	<b>d</b> are tiding
Y	Look at the sunshir	ne, it a beautiful	l day.	
6	© is being	<b>b</b> is going to be	© be	<b>d</b> being
u	Sne hadn't	finished the washing up	p when the guests a	arrived.
Ω	Thet's the least	<b>b</b> just	© before	d still
Ų	That's the boy	father is my teache		
q	whose     The officer	(b) who's	© who	d that
¥	The office	work is very large.		
40	© which	<b>b</b> what	© where	<b>d</b> when
UU	They for an	hour now, so they're ti	red.	
99	© exercise	<b>b</b> have been exercising	g © are exercising	d were exercising
W	Two months	a long time to wait for		
46	We were all are all	<b>b</b> is	© were	d have been
UG	we waved goodbye	the car was ou	ıt of sight.	
46	While	<b>b</b> when	© until	d by the time
<b>U</b> E	They had lots of por	tatoes, so they	buy any more.	_
94	w musmr	<b>© couldn't</b> le him irritable.	© wouldn't	didn't need to
VV	much, mad	e nim irritable.		
16	Adalia interest	<b>b</b> Worrying	© Worry	<b>d</b> Through worrying
Y	Adei is Inte	resting painter I have ev	ver known.	_
16	As seen es sha saw	<b>b</b> the more	© most	d the most
UU	As soon as sne saw	the girls, she asked the	em what they	
~~~		<b>b</b> have been doing	© have done	d are doing
	Fill in gap:	v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v v		
	Ramses Hilton is (a	) very expensiv	ve hotel on the ban	k of (b) River
	iville. The notel is v	ery attractive. Lots of f	famous people love	(c) there in
	order to enjoy the	privacy that the hotel	offer them it also	(d) security
	guards to keep repo	orters out.		
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
18	If you don't stop to s	smoke, you'll make your	self ill.	[]
IE.	Jana would prefer to	o work as a doctor from	work as a nurse	[]
40	Nadia has been stud	dying English since thre	e months.	ſ
4	He doesn't carry a l	ot of cash in order that a	avoid getting robbe	d. []
2(2)	Because the traffic	I arrived at the office lat	te.	
	@ 0.5 em @0			



6	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or d	<b>:</b>	i
1	"vou hurry	. you will be late for work	k." "I'm nearly read	ly now."
	@ Supposing	(h) Providing	© When	(d) Unless
2	"Did you phone Ade	el vesterday?" "No, I	, he came rour	id to see me."
	a needn't	(b) didn't need to	(c) shouldn't	(d) mustn't
3	"Do you have pen-f	riends?" "Yes, and	of them live abr	oad."
	@ moithou	(h) hoth	@all	(d) either
4	"I cut my hair myse	If." "Really? How brave!	1 by a haird	dresser."
	a cut mine	<b>b</b> have mine cut	© am cutting mine	d mine is cut
6	"I'm sorry I'm late."	' "I here for over	an hour."	
	a was waiting	(b) am waiting	© have waited	d have been waiting
6	"Shall I take my coa	at with me?" "Yes, take it	t it gets col	d later."
	(a) in case	(b) whereas	© in spite	(d) however
1	"Why didn't you go	to the party?" "Because	e of my frie	nds was invited."
	(a) none	<b>b</b> both	© either	<b>d</b> no
8		ing, he took his umbrella		
	@ Due to	<b>b</b> Because of	© Since	<b>d</b> Though
9	He be at w	ork. His car isn't outside	his house.	
	@ might		© can't	d must
10		hair cut next Saturday.		
	(a) have		©will have	<b>d</b> had
00		the door. It's locked.		
	@ pushing	<u> </u>	© to push	d to pushing
12	She prefers	trousers to skirts.		
	<b>a</b> wearing	<b>b</b> wear at two o'clock tomorrow	© to wear	d to wearing
16	The match	at two o'clock tomorrov	w afternoon.	<b>(1)</b>
	@ starts	<b>b</b> start	© is starting	<b>d</b> starting
14	We phone	Mary. It's her birthday to	oday.	A suc able to
44	@ needn't	<b>b</b> don't have to	© ought to	d are able to
16	As he is a policema	an, he is to keep	ing away all night.	@wing
44	@ used	<b>b</b> been used		d using
		know Adel Imam,	Odecan't the	d does they
	a don't they	<b>b</b> didn't they	© doesn't they	d does mey
A Contract	Fill in gap:			× 90000
00	Egypt is a country	in (a) north ea	st of Africa. Cairo	is the capital of Egypt.
	Many crops (b)	planted in Egypt.	It aspires to expor	t the narvest to foreign
	countries. Egypt h	nas many tourist destina	ations. It hopes (c)	increase the
	number of tourists	. If tourists are well treat	ted, they (d)	surely come again.
	Find the mistake	, then correct it:		:
		Tom doesn't like staying	up late.	[]
6	She isn't used to li	ve in tropical climates.		
20	The drowning chil	d was risking by the life	guard yesterday.	[]
2	The supermarket	has thirty employees, mo	ost of which work p	part time. []
2	Thick fog prevente	ed the plane of taking off		
2	use the traffic I ar	rived at the office late.		[]
-				

Mark	
قيم نفسك	25

	Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
		degree course difficult?		to it "
	got used	<b>b</b> used	© was used	d am used
2	"Did you read both	of those books?" "Yes,	but I didn't enjoy	of them "
_	neither	<b>b</b> both day." "You have	(Call	d either
3	"I feel very tired to	day." "You have	staved up so late I	ast night."
_	@ could	<b>b</b> might	©shouldn't	d won't
4	"I love going to the	<b>b</b> might beach." "".		
	@ So do I	<b>b</b> So I do	© Neither do I	d Nor I do.
5	"This cake tastes v	ery sweet." "I think I pu	t sugar in it	."
	(a) too many	(b) too much	©a lot	(d) a great deal
6	"Why are you so tir	red?" "Because I	to getting up early	v in the morning "
	@ am used	<b>b</b> am not used	© didn't use	d used
7	I take your	order now, madam?		
_	@ May		© Must	<b>@</b> Ought
8	the heavy	snow, we managed to g	et to the office.	<b>© 239</b>
	(a) In spite of	<b>b</b> While	© However	<b>d</b> Whereas
9	Mai all her	money by the time the s	shops closed.	
	(a) had spent	<b>b</b> was spending	© spent	d has spent
10	He acts he	were my friend, but he	isn't.	
	as though	<b>b</b> though	© as	<b>d</b> like
QQ	If you in su	ch a hurry, you wouldn'	t have forgotten the	e file.
	(a) hadn't lett	<b>b</b> had left	© have left	d having left
12	John fell hi	s bicycle and hurt his kr	nees.	<u> </u>
	(a) down	(b) ground	Cabout	(d) off
13	No reporters	to approach the scer	e of the accident.	
	(a) allowed	<b>b</b> were allowed	© needn't	d didn't have
14	The girl at t	that desk is my best frie	nd.	
	<b>a</b> sits	<b>b</b> to sit	<b>©</b> sat	<b>d</b> sitting
16	The sea isi	in this area.		
44	a quite a clean	<b>b</b> quite clean	© clean quite	d a quite clean
16	We expect everyon	e to the meeting	g.	•
	@ to come	<b>b</b> come	© to coming	<b>d</b> coming
	Fill in gap:			
17	Healthy food should	d include vitamins and p	roteins. It has to (a)	fresh and
	low in fat and salt. I	t shouldn't contain harn	nful chemical additi	ves. If we (b)
	not eat the right foo	od, we (c) get ill	and lose our ability	/(d) do our
	work well.		•	
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
		more. He doesn't enjoy	to be laughed at	[]
<b>UE</b>	He didn't work hard	for he lost his work.		[]
20	His mother is Frenc	h even though his fathe	r is English.	[]
41	prefer reading a be	ook than watching T.V.		ř i
22	My uncle has a large	e collection of antiques,	many of whom are	valuable. []
			-	



	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or c	<b>d:</b>	4
1	You will do as I tell y	you?		
	(a) won't you	<b>b</b> do you	© wouldn't you	d don't you
2	You can tell from he	er mouth and eyes that :	sheher mo	other.
	(a) takes after	<b>b</b> takes down	© takes from	d takes off
8	You look tired these	e days. You to I	oed earlier.	
	(a) will go	<b>(b)</b> should go	© ought to	d shouldn't go
4	Yesterday they left	France where	they are going to s	pend their holiday.
	(a) from	<b>b</b> to	© for	d in
5	Why do you always	avoidhim?		
	@ meeting	<b>b</b> to meet	© meet	d in meeting
6	Who was she given			
	@ by	<b>b</b> for	© from	d of
7	When you have fini	shed typing the report,	it by anoth	er secretary.
_	@ will check	<b>b</b> checked	© WIII be checked	a) nas cneckea
8		he looked she	nad been III.	
_	a such as		© the same	d as if
Q	We hope that	us when you come t	o our country.	d you're visiting
46	(a) you visited	<b>b</b> you would visit	to stoy at home	w you're visiting
<b>U</b> U		old weather that we had	© so	d such a
66	@ rather	<b>ⓑ such</b> e ones he has l		G Socii d
u	Those boys, are un	b whom	© which	<b>d</b> what
66	There is r			
W.	_		© a lot	<b>d</b> not
66	<b>@ any</b> The problem has b	een getting worse	a long time.	
W.	(a) for		© during	<b>(d)</b> in
60		ot of damage.		
4,		<b>b</b> the	© some	d no article
00	The English yard is	the metre.	0	
4	(a) smaller than		© the same as	d the same than
00	That teacher alway	ys me laugh.		
	@ do	<b>b</b> make	© does	<b>d</b> makes
-	Fill in gap:		* ** ** * ** **	
1		y important for (a)	learners of Engl	ish. It gives (b)
W.	different meanings	s of a word. Most diction	naries help them to	pronounce a word
	correctly (c)	using pronunciation	symbols and syllab	les. Moreover, it snows
	the learner (d)	to use the word by	giving them examp	les in sentences.
-	Find the mistake			
4	- sures sinks assessed and a contract and	t enough to do the cros	sword.	ſ
		t I'll carry out working a		[
	I'm happy at the jo			
	l've never seen so			
		difficult decision to do n	ext week.	[
•			_	گالها عوامة
	in the second second second	17	6	العبف الأول والثلاث الأراث الأ



	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or o	d:	!		
1	"Have you found yo	our keys yet?" "No, I've I	looked but	I can't find them."		
		<b>b</b> everything				
2	"Shall we go shopp	ing?" "I can't go until th	e babysitter	29		
		<b>b</b> arrives		d is arriving		
3	"Where's Ashraf?"	"I'm not sure. He	be in the study."			
	@ might	<b>b</b> will	© ought	<b>d</b> shall		
4	is that lette	r I wrote? Have you see	en it?			
_	@ Which	<b>b</b> When	© What	<b>d</b> Where		
5	the bank is	closed, what will we do	?			
_		<b>b</b> Though		<b>d</b> Providing		
6		e sofa about the				
		<b>b</b> to think		<b>d</b> thinking		
7		hear they a pri				
		<b>b</b> were winning				
8		early this morning, so w				
4		<b>b</b> didn't need to		@ couldn't		
9		k fixed before we went o				
44	(a) have had	<b>b</b> are having	© had had	d will be having		
10	amount of	money can buy happine				
44	No     N	<b>b</b> Never	© None	<b>@</b> Not		
UU		, he was thoroughly unf				
44	(a) In			<b>d</b> For		
12		orried about his health,				
44		<b>b</b> break down		d knock down		
<b>UB</b>		was responsible for t				
44		<b>b</b> which				
14		vith the girls at the resta				
44		<b>b</b> scarcely never		d scarcely not		
UE		been carrying an umbre				
44	@ was	•	©were	d has		
U		tion him to lunc	_			
	(a) being asked	<b>b</b> to asking	© to ask	<b>d</b> asking		
	Fill in gap:			MANAGE AND		
17	My father is a grea	at man. He (a)	a good student ar	nd now he (b)		
		ne company (c)	20 years ago. He	is (d) to retire		
	next year.					
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:	4 · do other notation of defending as which the notation and come appropri	1000 1000 pp 100		
18	Aya used to be the	happier than she is now	<i>1</i> .	[]		
	He can't stand trea			[]		
20	I not only enjoy my	job and it's very well pai	id.	[]		
20	I'm sure he is going	to understand if you ex	plain it to him clear			
22	We were living in th	e same house for twelv	e years before we d	decided to move.		
	1					



	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c o	aw els	
_	You needn't the book back until		
4	(a) be brought (b) brought	3	d bring
2	Wouldn't you rather we shoppin		
	@ don't do		
3	Will you please let? I'll tell you w		
	@ me to speak		d me speaking
4	Why watch a film on TV?		
	a do we b aren't we	©shall we	d don't we
•	'Where are you going so fast?' 'Sorry, I		
	(a) am in a (b) have a		<b>d</b> have
6	When I was five, I swim quite we		_
	(a) could (b) can	<b>©shall</b>	<b>d</b> let
7	This is the girl was very ill last m		
	(a) which (b) whom	© whose	<b>d</b> who
8	They won't believe me I swear it		
	(a) whatever (b) even if	© in spite of	<b>d</b> however
9	The tennis court was wet for us	_	
44	(a) very (b) too	© enough	<b>d</b> so
10	The more he eats he gets.		
44	(a) the fatter (b) fatter		<b>d</b> faster
U	The cook did nothing but about		
44	(a) to complain (b) complain		d he'd complained
12	That was very kind you. Thank you ver		
40	(a) from (b) of	© did	<b>d</b> on
CE.	She was angry to argue with he	r boyfriend.	
44	(a) too (b) quite	© so	<b>d</b> very
U	day, I will buy a big house with a		
46	@ A <b>(b)</b> The	© That	<b>d</b> One
ale.	you leave now, you won't miss th	he start of the film.	CD MALE And of
46	Supposing     D Unless	© Providing	<b>d</b> Would
UC	If I feel better tonight, I to the pa		<b>A</b>
	(a) would go (b) go	© went	d may go
Part of Parts	Fill in gap:		
16	No one can deny that the computer is		
	plays (a) important part in ted	chnology because i	t's more accurate and
	faster (b) human beings. It is u	ısed in (c) f	ields. It can be used in
	banks to control cashing and bank acco	ounts. In addition, th	ne computer is ideal for
	(d) our everyday needs.		
	Find the mistake, then correct it:		
	I have cut my hair last week.		
	Neither Nadia of Fadia knows how to dri		[
	She took off her coat by the time she ent		
	The bus to Alexandria departs for an hou		<u>[</u>
22	This holiday was different of all the other	rs.	[



## **General Exercise On Grammar**



25

	Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:			
1	"Did you enjoy you	r holiday?" "Yes, but I'n	n glad home	e again."
	<b>a</b> being	<b>b</b> to be	© be	d have been
2	"Have you got any I	brothers?" "I've got two	o of them a	re older than me."
4		<b>b</b> Both		
	"I've just passed my	y driving test." "Congra	tulations. I wish I	a car."
4		<b>b</b> can drive	© drive	d could drive
4		Ild look for a new job.		
E	Would			<b>d</b> Had
V		I add to the cake mixtu  (b) How much		A How borns
6		she had been workin		
4	@ when	<b>b</b> how long	C how long ago	d what time
9	Janet had trouble w	vith her job at first." "Ye	s she to w	orking on her own "
	(a) used	<b>b</b> get used	© was used	d wasn't used
8	The reason	he is happy is that e ha	s just passed his ex	kams.
	(a) where	<b>b</b> when	© that	<b>d</b> why
9	Who in my	desk? Things have beer	n moved.	•
44	(a) look	<b>b</b> looks	© looking	d has been looking
10	had he put	down the receiver.		_
44	(a) Only	<b>(b)</b> Just	© Hardly	d Yet
W	he to look to	or us, he would not be a	able to find us.	C) 441 4 4
46	@ Could	0		
WG.	a forecast	eather they still <b>ⓑ future</b>	expect a rise in ter	nperature.
18	Avman will be read	y in a minute. He	a hath	w experience
-		b had		d would have had
14		ope number she		C Woold Have Had
	a unless	<b>b</b> perhaps	© in case	d whether
16	He gave me two ora	anges but were	bad.	
	@ all		© some	d either
16	He is deaf t	o hear what we say.		
	(a) too	<b>b</b> so	© very	d enough
	Fill in gap:			
17	The heart is the me	ost vital organ in the h	uman body. If it st	ops, death (a)
	surely follow. Some	e of (b) bad h	abits we get into,	can affect our hearts
		r example, increases t	_	
		stopped smoking re	cently because th	ey want to avoid (d)
-	heart disea			
10	Find the mistake,			
	A cure for the disea		na siek	[]
		ocolate makes me feeli he told us the news.	ng sick.	[]
		use he was dissatisfied	for months	[]
		money, I'll buy you a ne		[]
				£



				6
11170	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or c	d:	
1	You broke the wind	low,?		
_		<b>b</b> didn't you		d haven't you
2	You can try being a	guitarist as soon as you	u	•
_	@ will qualify	<b>(b)</b> qualify	© will be qualified	d may qualify
3		ered that was very cleve		2
	<b>a</b> whatever	<b>b</b> whoever	© whomever	d whosever
4	Would you mind	up. I can't hear.		
4	<b>a</b> to talk	<b>b</b> to say	© speaking	(d) shouting
E	What, you want din	ner? I didn't know you	hungry!	(D.,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,,
		<b>b</b> were so		d were such
6	What would you do	if you Prime M	inister?	Awayld ba
4	(a) was	<b>b</b> were at the theatre,	© De	d would be
V	We saw a new play	at the theatre,	we had supper at a	restaurant.
6		<b>b</b> then which		
ŏ		o meet for lunch but he	alan't turn	
	@ up		© III	d over
9		time for lunch.	@ lata	(d) much
40		<b>b</b> many		@ much
UU		e theatre in time for the		(A) loft
44		<b>b</b> reached	© got	<b>d</b> left
UU	There news	s tonight.	@ gwant manu	d hasn't many
46	a arent any	<b>b</b> isn't much	c aren't many	a nash i many
UZ	The vegetables?	come from our o	wn garden.	d All they
46	The start and start	<b>b</b> They all	v shop	W All Illey
de	nat's the girl	father has a grocer	© whose	d whom
46		<b>b</b> which	_	WIIOIII
UC	nat opera singer.	sung better in h <b>ⓑ has neve</b> r	© have never	d never have
46	She asked		C Have Hevel	W Hevel Have
		b him to	(C) him	(d) he
		n decadence, a		
40		<b>b</b> nevertheless		d in spite of
10	44			
	Fill in gap:			in the discount
U	Ahmed has learnt	to play the piano since h	ie was ten. He parti	cipated in many
	school concerts (a	) 2004. No one (	(b) ever pia	d (c) form a
		always encouraged hin		u (c) ioi iii a
-		year his dream (d)	come a de.	
	Find the mistake,	The second Park Control of the Second Park Contr		
		r the restaurant was, th	e food tasted terrib	le. []
	I can only help if yo			[]
		e game was not off.		[]
2	Ahmed is having h	is house decorating at t	he moment.	[
20	She was upset bed	cause she was waiting to	o hear trom her son	tor days. [

### General Exercise On Grammar



25

	Choose the correct	et answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1	It must be someboo	dy withidea of t	he geography of the	e house.
	any any	(b) much	© no	d few
2	I intend the	e summer studying.	O	
	@ spend		© to spend	d   will spend
8	It was exp	ensive present that she	didn't know what to	say!
	@ such a	<b>b</b> such an	©so much	(d) so
4	It looks terrible,	?		
		<b>b</b> isn't here	© does it	d doesn't it
<b>6</b>	If Kate gets tired, s			
_	@ would go	<b>b</b> go	© went	d will go
6		take your umbrella.		
4	a so that		© because	<b>d</b> why
V	It when I c			
4		<b>b</b> had a wind	©made a wind	d did wind
8	It rain but			
	@ will	<b>b</b> may	<b>©</b> can	<b>d</b> should
e	I shouldn't at	t you yesterday,' Jane s		
44	(a) shout		© be shouted	d have shouted
UU	I have lot o		•	
44	(a) other		© others	d the others
UU	I hate a ca			
99	(a) to drive	<b>b</b> driving	© drive	d the drive
	-	to see me,' said Jim.		
	@ nobody		Canybody	d no one
		that I'll win the pools or		<b>O</b> 11
90	l con't	<b>b</b> hoping	© to expect	d that I hope
W.	® make off	mind whether to go to It	aly or Spain for my	noliday.
46	I make on	b make up	© make for	d make at
44	moot	in two hours' time	@ manda	<b>A</b>
66	@ meet I don't like	<b>b</b> am meeting	Cimeers	d was meeting
	(a) that I go	-	<b>6</b> 70	
	* * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * * *	<b>b</b> I go	© go	<b>d</b> going
44	Fill in gap:			**
	Energy and water	are the artery of life. A	Il living things and	machines (a)
	live or work withou	t them. So we mustn't i	gnore these proble	ms (b) we will
		Nile is the only source		in Egypt. So we must
-	the same of the sa	se (d) water onl	y wnen necessary.	
-	Find the mistake,	* 155 *		
	He tried to give awa			[]
19	I was walking down	the street while a car s	topped beside me.	[]
	l'Il leave before he i			]
66	He is keen at photo	graphy.		[]
यय	All is not good abou	ıt playing football. He ra	ther play squash.	[]

## **General Exercise On Grammar**



25

	Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1	He waited for her fe	or two hours but she did	dn't	
-		<b>b</b> turn out		d turn off
2		to carry the box.		
		<b>b</b> strong enough	© too strong enoug	gh dsuch strong
3		ell, but he plays tennis .		
		<b>b</b> much better		d best
4		ondary school for three		
	(a) has been	(b) is	© had been	<b>d</b> was
6	Everybody in this o	class done very	well in the exam.	
		<b>b</b> are		<b>d</b> is
6	Each of the	a lot of money		
	a sisters have	a lot of money  (b) sisters has	© sister has	d sister have
1	Did vou remember	the door last n	ight?' 'Yes, I did rer	nember.'
	(a) to close	<b>b</b> closing	© of closing	d of close
8		all my exams.		
	(a) have finished	<b>b</b> finished	©will have finishe	d d had finished
9	A lot of money has	been the bank		
	a stolen from	<b>b</b> robbed at	©stolen to	d robbed in
10		d what happened he ca		
	(a) Soon	<b>b</b> As soon as	©As soon	d So soon
10		eal at the new Chinese r		
		<b>(b)</b> What about		<b>d</b> Why don't we
12		want to go, I'll say no m		
		<b>(b)</b> Since		<b>d</b> Therefore
13		work. Maggie sat down		
		<b>b</b> Having done		d Has done
14		I closed my eyes.		
	(a) just	<b>b</b> as soon as	Calready	<b>d</b> still
16		la it rains later t		
		<b>b</b> in case		d due to
16		to the new staff ye		
		<b>b</b> has been given		d was being given
-	> Fill in gap:			
		ht a story from the boo	okshon (a)	story was written by
44	Naguih Mahfouz	I enjoyed it very much	that I have (b)	all the afternoon
	(c) it It	was about the Egyptia	n Revolution in 19	19. I think my friends
	(d) enjoy if	as I did.		-
No. of the last	Find the mistake			
			romotion	[]
		ely hard that he got a pr		
66	bespile of her sev	ere disability, she fulfille st of the society's proble	ome are the recult $\wedge$	funemployment [ ]
66	Ali batas ta baya b	is mistakes correct.	and the result o	
_		perations on people in h	ospitals	[]
यर	surgeons make of	sei audiis dii hedhie iii ii	ospitais.	[]



	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or o	d:	
•	some spar	e time, Tom went for a v	valk.	
	Having	<b>b</b> Have	© Has	d To have
2		e I fell and brok	e my leg.	
_	(a) where	<b>b</b> when	© which	d why
3	It's getting	colder. I think it's going	to snow.	
_	@ coldest	<b>b</b> cold and	© colder and	d coldest and
4	The boys avoided	through the dark	k forest.	
		<b>b</b> walking		d to walking
5	The play had starte	d we got to the	theatre.	
	@ while	•	© just	d by the time
6		oping yesterday becaus		
		<b>b</b> need to		d don't need to
7		th. I in a new ho		
		<b>b</b> will be living		
8		once?" No, I, I ca		
	@ mustn't	<b>b</b> needn't	© hadn't	d haven't
9	having no t	alents, the man became	e a popular TV. pers	sonality.
		<b>b</b> Although	© Unless	d In spite of
10	Don't make any noi			
	@ will	<b>b</b> do	© won't	d don't
QQ		laughing. There was a l		
44		<b>b</b> laughed		<b>d</b> laughter
12		at parties without th		
	@ out		© on	(d) up
13		er the piano all	afternoon.	
44	•	<b>b</b> practise	© playing	d practising
14		to avoid to that	t terrible man.	
44	a speak		© speaking	d to speak
16	He has a car so he			
	a needn't		© mustn't	d shouldn't
16	He was starring	_		
	(a) hard	<b>b</b> hardly	© hardening	d hardy
	Fill in gap:			
10	We are (a)	tomorrow afternoon to A	Aswan on a holidav	. We (b)
		tickets we need for our		
		ut not too expensive.		
A Personal Print	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
-	·	hich I last saw a comic t	film	
-		alked forward the front o		[]
		e he lived in Alexandria k		
		nis teeth extracting yest		[]
		medicine every morning		[
44	. Salonto made give		,	L

## **General Exercise**On Crammar



25

	Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c or	<b>d:</b>	
1	We had sta	arted the journey than w	e got a flat tyre.	
	(a) the moment that	<b>b</b> no sooner	© whenever	<b>d</b> hardly
2	When we lived by t	he sea; we to s	wim every morning.	
	_	<b>b</b> used	_	d got used
3	They be fri	ends. They never speal	to each other.	
	(a) would	(b) could	© can't	d mustn't
4	That office block is	much than this	one.	
	(a) taller	(b) tall	© tallest	d being tall
5	Hang the picture of	n the wall the fi	re place.	
		<b>b</b> under		d at
		dn't go to work yesterda		
	(a) Feeling	(b) Feel	© To feel	d To have felt
7	"Where is dad?" "F	le's in the garden	some apples from	n the tree."
		<b>b</b> picking		
and the		salary when one has a l		
-		<b>b</b> Having to live		
		about the acciden		
		n <b>b</b> any information		
		ep after he a he		
	(a) has	<b>b</b> had	-	d had had
66	He has plenty of me	oney. He earn h	nis livina	
44		b mustn't	_	d couldn't
16	0	. The news bad		Coolaii i
	a are		© with	d were
	0	train if hesoor		Weie
<b>u</b> e		<b>b</b> won't pack		d does not nack
90				d does not pack
UG		good-looking dog, <b>b</b> wasn't he		d) is he
46	0	_	Chashine	U is the
<b>U</b> E		finished it.	@ eeen	(A) almondu
44	@ yet		© soon	<b>d</b> already
UU		lution worse the	_	(A) was nothing
No.	@ will get	<b>b</b> got	© is getting	d was getting
	Fill in gap:			
10		tadium to watch footba		
	watching the matc	h, it started to rain. Dur	ring the rain, it was	difficult (b) the
		the ball. No sooner had		
	declare the end of	(d) match than	the spectators left t	he stadium.
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
18		machine is more econ	omical model on the	market. []
-		e, Ali had already left.		[
-		the day on the beach?		
		a diet, she put on five k	kilos.	[
		e amount of sugar you		
		Jan Jour		•





	Choose the corre	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1	Aya by the	e time I get home tonigh	t.	***
	(a) is leaving	<b>b</b> will have left	© will leave	d will be leaving
2	Jane works very h	ard Kate is lazy		
4		<b>(b)</b> despite	© though	d in spite
3	you give n	ne a lift to the supermarl	ket please?	·
4	@ Ought	<b>(b)</b> Should	© Would	<b>d</b> Do
4	"Did you watch the	e film yesterday?" "No, i	t by the time	e we got home."
4	(a) finished	<b>b</b> has finished	© was finishing	d had finished
9	" we miss t	the bus, what will we do	?" "Call a taxi."	
G	© Supposing	<b>b</b> Providing	© When	<b>d</b> Unless
Q	"Are you tired?" "I	No, I to walking I		
6	@ got used		© am used to	d am using
Y	all	ses are beautiful. Yes, t	out I don't think	of them will fit me.
8	0			d no
9	an i go out torng	ht, mum?" "I'd rather yo	ou at nome and d	
9	"How long	<b>b</b> stayed Tony?" "Since we were	C Stay	d had stayed
4	@ did you know	<b>b</b> do you know	Children."	
10	"I aila doesn't stud	ly enough." "I know. I an	ofroid obo	d nave you known
-	(a) won't pass	<b>b</b> won't be passing	Cwon't have page	ner exams.
11	"Janette has been	writing letters all morning	na " "Yes she	six letters so for "
	(a) wrote	<b>b</b> has been writing	© has written	d was writing
12	"The sun is very br	ight today." "I know. Th	at's I'm wea	aring sunglasses "
	(a) where	<b>(b)</b> when	©why	(d) which
	A: "I love reading."			<u> </u>
	@ I do so	<b>b</b> so I am	© so I do	d so do I
14	He made her	the report four times.		
44	@ write	<b>b</b> to write	© wrote	<b>d</b> writing
		his new secreta	ry.	
44	@ at	<b>b</b> with	© on	<b>d</b> by
	am very tired bec	ause I had hardly	sleep last night.	
	any	<b>b</b> enough	© some	d much
	Fill in gap:			
17	Planning your time	e is very important. I adı	mire those (a)	are organized and
	don't put (b)	till tomorrow what	must be done to	day. Surely, they will
	achieve better res	sults (c) others	. Always remembe	er to (d) your
	homework regular			
	Find the mistake,			
18	Whatever hard he	studies, he doesn't get g	ood marks.	[]
19	This diet says to be	rich in vitamins.		[]
40	There was a lot of t	raffic because a car had	d broken up in the m	niddle of the road. []
99	one was pleased b	ecause she gave the job	).	[]
44	our team nad scor	ed three goals until we g	jot to the match.	[]



	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or d	l:	
1	Could you get me t	wo of bread froi	m the bakery?	
			© kilos	d pieces
2	This time next mont	h we for our ho	liday.	
	are packing	<b>b</b> will pack	© will have packed	l <b>d</b> will be packing
3	"Whose is this earri	ing?" "I don't know. I foເ	ınd it when I	the house."
	(a) have cleaned	<b>b</b> had cleaned	© was cleaning	d cleaned
4	"The children must	have been hungry" "I kr	now. They ate	on their plates."
	@ everywhere	<b>b</b> everything	© anything	<b>d</b> something
•	he realized	the truth, he informed t	he police.	
	(a) As	<b>b</b> No sooner	© As soon as	d Soon
0	Ali is putting on his	coat. Lalla "IT you	out, piease buy i	ne the newspaper.
	@ going	<b>b</b> went	© have gone	d are going
7	He has always been	n a hard worker and still		
	(a) has		© is	d has been
8	He'll explain the po	int again,?		
			© will he	d wouldn't he
9	I didn't like the mar	n, he made me a		2
	(a) to feel	<b>b</b> felt	© feel	d feeling
10	I can't resist	blue.		
	a to wear	<b>b</b> wore	© wearing	d to wearing
00	I hate mon			
	(a) borrow	<b>b</b> borrowed	© to borrow	<b>d</b> borrowing
12	I was afraid	mentioning the news t		
	@ to	<b>(b)</b> in	© of	d at
13	I'm coming in your	car,?		
		<b>b</b> aren't i	© shan't I	d isn't I
14		my dress dry cleaned.		
	@ make	<b>b</b> take	© have	d do
		se earlier. I should		
	<b>a</b> have caught	<b>b</b> catch	© caught	d be catching
16	You have never be	en honest, you?		
	are are	(b) do	© have	d weren't
	Fill in gap:			
16	Hani is my best fri	end. He (a) his	business in Italy th	ree months ago. When
	he returns to Eqvi	ot next July, he (b)	nine months v	vith us. In fact, he has
	called me several	times (c)he left	the city. So, I must	t remember (d)
	our friends to mee	t him when he conies ho	me.	
	Find the mistake	, then correct it:		
	Ali is so short to jo			[]
10	She is friendly with	the two children whose	e their mother is the	
60	Jana didn't on to t	ne dentist for six years.		[]
		xperienced to get the jo	b.	[]
	The flat wasn't cle			[]
-		-		

#### General Exercise On Grammar



25

	Choose the correct	ct answer from a, b, c or	d:	
1	In the mile race, the	e winner was Alibrok	ke the school recor	d for the distance.
	@ who	<b>b</b> whom	© which	d whose
2	It is getting late. Yo	ou		
	@ had better go	<b>b</b> would rather go	© have better go	d better go
3	It is high time you	your childish wa	ys.	
	(a) changed	<b>b</b> must change	© have changed	<b>d</b> should change
4	It was not difficult t	o move into my new hou	use, as I did not hav	e furniture.
_	@ many	<b>b</b> more	© much	
5	It wasn't easy to pu	ıt her bad temp	er.	
		<b>b</b> away with		d off with
6	John doesn't intend	d to go to the party, and	do l.	
4	@ no	<b>b</b> so	© neither	d either
7	Let's go as soon as			
4		<b>b</b> came	© comes	d will come
8		s old. She is you	ing to go out alone.	
	@ too	<b>b</b> so	© very	d enough
9		the work done when		
44		<b>b</b> to have seen	© seeing	d to seeing
UU		smoke a great deal.		
44	(a) used to	<b>b</b> is using	© was using	d was used
UU	Need he go so soor	n? Yes, he if he		
44	@ needs		© may	d would
UZ		bell rung the bo		
46	@ when	<b>b</b> than	© as	d that
<b>U</b> E		yed hockey and		
44		b the next day		d that day
UG		e always fighting		
46		<b>b</b> each other		<b>d</b> both
UE		e lines of her letter, I'm	sure Janet is home	
46	between		© across	d through
UU		aying the piano		
mus .	(a) to	<b>b</b> than	© from	<b>d</b> rather
	Fill in gap:			
17	The Suez Canal is	one (a) the w	orld's most famous	s canals. In 2015, the
		ilometers longer after o		
		. Many more ships (b)		
		The ships will bring a		
(fan		president opened it (d)	August 20	15.
	Find the mistake,			
10	She is jealous at he	r well-off sister in law.		[]
	My grandfather die			[]
		wiches in case I'll get hu	ingry.	[]
		ne could finish early.		[]
44	Dad didn't let me to	arive his car.		[]

#### General Exercise On Grammar



25

	Choose the correc	t answer from a, b, c or o	d:	
1	She can't stand	to music like that.		
	(a) to listen	<b>b</b> listening	<b>©</b> listen	d to be listening
-	•	wannine years.		
	@ ago	<b>b</b> from	© for	<b>d</b> since
3	She was ill	she stayed at home.		
	(a) however	<b>b</b> yet	© nevertheless	<b>d</b> consequently
4	Somebody told me	that story, I've forgotte	n?	
	@ whom	<b>b</b> who	© whose	<b>d</b> which
E	That couldn't be Os	sama you saw me with la	ast night. I haven't s	seen him ages.
	@ for	<b>b</b> since	•	<b>d</b> during
6		have been such a		
_		<b>b</b> who's books		
		ptsuch a lot of l		
		<b>b</b> about which		
8	The bigger the men	nory is, the use		
	@ more	<b>b</b> most	© much	d many
9		any knowledge		
44	_	<b>b</b> to have	_	d of having
10		II end in a few t		
44	@ days'	<b>b</b> dates	© day's	@ days
QQ		children to wor		
44	@ must	<b>b</b> has	© should	<b>d</b> are
UZ	_	d very hard to put		(A) -#
44	© on	<b>(b) in</b>	_	<b>d</b> off
<b>UE</b>		he lives, needs repairin		(A) water
44	_	<b>b</b> where	_	<b>d</b> who
UC		moved. They don't live		(A) week
46	anymore			d yet
<b>UE</b>		othing, the seri		@ most
44	@ much	<b>b</b> many	© more	
UU	(a) the high	ou earn, the per <b>ⓑ the highest</b>	© the higher	d highest
		W me mgnesi		- Ingresi
	Fill in gap:			
	Considered to be	the birthplace of civiliz	ation, Egypt (a)	a leading role in
	the Middle East as	s well (b) the	Arab world. within	the tramework of (c)
-	CANADA CA	ypt managed to put an e	ena to (a) u	oubles in the area.
	Find the mistake,	then correct it:		
	He said to be a dish			[]
19	How long did you p	ass your test?		
20	It is very more expe	ensive to live in London	tnan any other city	in Britain. []
		t lenses I had tested my	eyes every three n	nontns. [] []
44	Tea was grown in I	naia.		





### تصريفات الأفعال الغير منتظمة

#### Verbs with no changes

#### أفعال تصريفاتها الثلاثة لا تتغير

Present S	Past simple	P.P.	Meaning	Present S	Past simple	P.P.	Meaning
hurt	hurt	hurt	يجرح	let	let	let	يدع
cost	cost	cost	يتكلف	put	put	put	يضع
cut	cut	cut	يقطع	shut	shut	shut	يغلق
hit	hit	hit	يضرب	set	set	set	تغرب
broadcast	broadcast	broadcast	يذيع	spread	spread	spread	ينشر / ينتشر

#### أفعال تصريفها الثاني والثالث لا يختلفان Verbs with one change

Present S	Past simple	P.P.	Meaning	Present S	Past simple	P.P.	Meaning
build	built	built	يبنى	say	said	said	يقول
burn	burnt	burnt	يحرق	sell	sold	sold	يبيع
buy	bought	bought	يشترى	send	sent	sent	يرسل
catch	caught	caught	يمسك	seek	sought	sought	يسعى إلى
creep	crept	crept	يزحف	shine	shone	shone	تشرق
dig	dug	dug	يحفر	shoot	shot	shot	يطلق
feed	fed	fed	يُطعم	sit	sat	sat	يجلس
feel	felt	felt	يشعر	sleep	slept	slept	ينام
fight	fought	fought	يحارب		smelt	smelt	يشم
find	found	found	تخد	spend	spent	spent	يصرف/ينفق
get	got	got	يحصل على		spelt	spelt	يتهجى
grind	ground	ground	يطحن	spill	spilt	spilt	يسكب
have	had	had	يملك	spin	spun	spun	يدور / يغزل
hang	hung	hung	يعلق	spoil	spoiled / spoilt	spoiled / spoilt	يفسد/يتلف
hear	heard	heard		split	split	split	ينقسم/ينشطر
hold	held	heid		stand	stood	stood	يقف
keep	kept	kept	يحفظ	stick	stuck	stuck	يلصق
kneel	knelt	knelt	يركع	sting	stung	stung	يلدغ
lay	laid	laid		strike	stuck	stuck	يضرب
lie	lied	lied	يكذب	sweep	swept	swept	يڪنس
lead	led	led		spin	spun	spun	يدور/يغزل
learn	learnt	learnt		teach	taught	taught	يدرس
leave	left	left		think	thought	thought	يفكر
lend	lent	lent	يقرض	tell	told	told	يغبر
lose	lost	lost		thrust	thrust	thrust	يدفع / يطعن
light	lit / lighted	lit / lighted	يضيء / ينير		thought	thought	ى ئى تى تى
make	made	made		understand	understood	understood	يفهم



mean	meant	meant	يعني/يقصد	unwind	unwound	unwound	يفك/يرخي
meet	met	met	يقابل	weep	wept	wept	يبكى
mislead	misled	misled	يضلل / يخدع	win	won	won	يفوز
pay	paid	paid	يدفع	withstand	withstood	withstood	يقاوم / يواجه
read	read	read	يقرأ	withhold	withheld	withheld	يحجب/يعرقل

### أفعال تصريفاتها الثلاثة مختلفة Verbs with two changes

Present	Past simple	P.P	Meaning	Present	Past simple	P.P	Meaning
am, is,are	was/were	been	يكون	mistake	mistook	mistaken	يخطئ
awake	awoke	awoken	يستيقظ	overcome	overcame	overcome	يتغلب على
arise	arose	arisen	يظهر/ينشأ	overdo	overdid	overdone	يبالغ/يفرط
become	became	become	يصبح	overtake	overtook	overtaken	يجتاز/ يتجاوز
begin	began	begun	بيدا	ride	rode	ridden	يركب
bite	bit	bitten	يعض	ring	rang	rung	يرن
blow	blew	blown	يهب	rise	rose	risen	يرتفع
break	broke	broken	يكسر	run	ran	run	يجرى
bear	bore	born	يحمل/يلد	say	said	said	يقول
beat	beat	beaten	يضرب	saw	sawed	sawn	ينشر
choose	chose	chosen	يختار	see	saw	seen	یری
come	came	come	يأتى	sew	sewed	sewn	يخيط
do - does	did	done	يفعل	shake	shook	shaken	يهز
draw	drew	drawn	يرسم	shrink	shrank	shrunk	ينكمش
drink	drank	drunk	يشرب	shine	shone	shone	يتلألأ / يشرق
drive	drove	driven	يقود	sing	sang	sung	يغنى
draw	drew	drawn	يرسم	sink	sank	sunk	يغوص
eat	ate	eaten	يأكل	sow	sowed	sown	بيذر
fall	fell	fallen	يسقط	speak	spoke	spoken	يتحدث
fly	flew	flown	يطير	spin	span	spun	يغزل/يدور/يلف
forget	forgot	forgotten	ینسی	steal	stole	stolen	يسرق
forgive	forgave	forgiven	يسامح	swim	swam	swum	يسبح
freeze	froze	frozen	يتجمد	take	took	taken	يأخذ
give	gave	given	يعطى	tear	tore	torn	يمزق
go	went	gone	يذهب	throw	threw	thrown	يرمى
grow	grew	grown	يزرع	wear	wore	worn	يرتدى
get	got	gotten/got	يحصل	write	wrote	written	يڪتب
hide	hid	hidden	يختفي	withdraw	withdrew	withdrawn	بنسحب ريسحب
know	knew	known	يعرف	weave	wove	woven	ينسج / يحوك
lie	lay	lain	يرقد		ينتفع به	اللهم علم	







## محتــوى الكتــاب

	Content
1	Parts of Speech
2	Sentence Form
3	Question Form
4	Present Tenses
5	Past Tenses
6	Future Tenses & forms
7	Passive
8	Relative Clauses
9	Direct and Reported Speech
10	IF Conditional
11	Wishing and regret
12	Conjunctions
13	Infinitive and Gerand
14	Modals & Deduction
15	Conjugation of Irregular Verbs
16	General Exercises

	المحتوي
	أجزاء الكلام
	تكوين الجملة
	تكوين السؤال
	أزمنة المضارع
	أزمنة الماضي
	أزمنة و صيغ المستقبل
	المبني للمجهول
	ضمائر الوصل
	المباشر والغير مباشر
	af حالات
	التمني والندم
	الروابط
	المصدر و <b>ing</b>
9	الأفعال الناقصة والاستنتا
نظمة	تصريفات اللفعال الغير منا
The state of the s	تمارین عامة